

TITLE 48 - FEDERAL ACQUISITION REGULATIONS SYSTEM

(Division: Department of Energy)

Revision Date - 07/22/2009

Part 970 - Doe Management and Operating Contracts

Select landscape print orientation to print wide tables in this document. To set landscape orientation click the preferences button on the print dialog window after this page is done loading.



Table of Contents

Subpart 970-01. Management and Operating Contract Regulatory System

- §100. Scope of part
- §103. Publication and codification

Subpart 970-03. Improper Business Practices and Personal Conflicts of Interest

- §309. Whistleblower Protection of Contractor Employees
 - §309-1. Applicability
- §370. Management Controls and Improvements
 - §370-1. Policy
 - §370-2. Contract clause
- §371. Conduct of employees of DOE management and operating contractors
 - §371-1. Scope of section
 - §371-2. Applicability
 - §371-3. Definition
 - §371-4. Gratuities
 - §371-5. Use of privileged information
 - §371-6. Incompatibility between regular duties and private interests
 - §371-7. Outside employment of contractor employees
 - §371-8. Employee disclosure concerning other employment services
 - §371-9. Contract clause

Subpart 970-04. Administrative Matters

- §404. Safeguarding classified information
 - §404-1. Definitions
 - §404-2. General
 - §404-3. Responsibilities of contracting officers
 - §404-4. Solicitation provision and contract clauses
- §407. Contractor records retention
 - §407-1. Applicability
 - §407-1-1. Alternate retention schedules
 - §407-1-2. Access to and ownership of records
 - §407-1-3. Contract clause
- §470. Department of Energy Directives
 - §470-1. General

§470-2. Contract clause

Subpart 970-08. Required Sources of Supplies and Services

§801. Excess personal property

§801-1. Policy

§808. Acquisition of printing

§808-1. Scope of section

§808-2. Policy

§808-3. Contract clause

Subpart 970-09. Contractor Qualifications

§905. Organizational conflicts of interest

§970. Performance guarantees

§970-1. Determination of responsibility

§970-2. Solicitation provision

Subpart 970-11. Describing Agency Needs

§1100. Policy

§1100-1. Performance-based contracting

§1100-2. Additional considerations

§1103-4. Contract clause

§1170. Work authorization

§1170-1. Policy

§1170-2. Contract provision

Subpart 970-15. Contracting by Negotiation

§1504. Contract pricing

§1504-1. Price analysis

§1504-1-1. Fees for management and operating contracts

§1504-1-2. Fee policy

§1504-1-3. Special considerations: Laboratory management and operation

§1504-1-4. Types of contracts and fee arrangements

§1504-1-5. General considerations and techniques for determining fixed fees

§1504-1-6. Calculating fixed fee

§1504-1-7. Fee Base

§1504-1-8. Special equipment purchases

§1504-1-9. Special considerations: Cost-plus-award-fee

§1504-1-10. Special considerations: Fee limitations

§1504-1-11. Documentation

§1504-2. Price negotiation

§1504-3. Documentation

§1504-3-1. Cost or pricing data

§1504-4. Special cost or pricing areas

§1504-4-1--970.1504-4-3. [Reserved]

§1504-5. Solicitation provision and contract clauses

Subpart 970-17. Special Contracting Methods

§1706. Management and operating contracts

§1706-1. Award, renewal, and extension

§1706-2. Contract clause

- §1707. Work for others
- §1707-1. Scope
- §1707-2. Purpose
- §1707-3. Terms governing work for others
- §1707-4. Contract clause

Subpart 970-19. Small, Small Disadvantaged and Women-Owned Small Business Concerns

- §1907. Subcontracting with Small Business, Small Disadvantaged Business and Woman-Owned Small Business Concerns
- §1907-1. Subcontracting plan requirements

Subpart 970-22. Application of Labor Policies

- §2200. Scope of subpart
- §2201. Basic labor policies
- §2201-1. Labor relations
- §2201-1-1. General
- §2201-1-2. Policies
- §2201-1-3. Contract clause
- §2201-2. Overtime management
- §2201-2-1. Policy
- §2201-2-2. Contract clause
- §2204. Labor standards for contracts involving construction
- §2204-1. Statutory and regulatory requirements
- §2204-1-1. Administrative controls and criteria for application of the Davis-Bacon Act in operational or maintenance activities
- §2208. Equal employment opportunity
- §2210. Service Contract Act
- §2270. Unemployment compensation

Subpart 970-23. Environment, Conservation, Occupational Safety, and Drug Free Work Place

- §2303. Hazardous materials identification and material safety
- §2303-1. General
- §2303-2. Contract clauses
- §2304. Use of recovered/recycled materials
- §2304-1. General
- §2304-2. Contract clause
- §2305. Workplace substance abuse programs-management and operating contracts
- §2305-1. General
- §2305-2. Applicability
- §2305-3. Definitions
- §2305-4. Solicitation provision and contract clause
- §2306. Suspension of payments, termination of contract, and debarment and suspension actions
- §2307. Contracting for Environmentally Preferable and Energy-Efficient Products and Services
- §2307-1. Motor vehicle fleet operations
- §2307-2. Contract clause

Subpart 970-26. Other Socioeconomic Programs

- §2670. Implementation of Section 3021 of the Energy Policy Act of 1992
- §2670-1. Requirements
- §2671. Diversity

- §2671-1. Policy
- §2671-2. Contract clause
- §2672. Implementation of Section 3161 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993
 - §2672-1. Policy
 - §2672-2. Requirements
 - §2672-3. Contract clause
- §2673. Regional partnerships
 - §2673-1. Policy
 - §2673-2. Contract clause

Subpart 970-27. Patents, Data, and Copyrights

- §2701. General
 - §2701-1. Applicability
- §2702. Patent related clauses
 - §2702-1. Authorization and consent
 - §2702-2. Notice and assistance regarding patent and copyright infringement
 - §2702-3. Patent indemnity
 - §2702-4. Royalties
 - §2702-5. Rights to proposal data
 - §2702-6. Notice of right to request patent waiver
- §2703. Patent rights
 - §2703-1. Purposes of patent rights clauses
 - §2703-2. Patent rights clause provisions for management and operating contractors
- §2704. Rights in data
 - §2704-1. General
 - §2704-2. Procedures
 - §2704-3. Contract clauses
- §2770. Technology Transfer
 - §2770-1. General
 - §2770-2. Policy
 - §2770-3. Technology transfer and patent rights
 - §2770-4. Contract clause

Subpart 970-28. Bonds and Insurance

- §2803. Insurance
 - §2803-1. Workers' Compensation Insurance
 - §2803-2. Contract clause

Subpart 970-29. Taxes

- §2902. Federal excise taxes
 - §2902-1. Exemptions from Federal excise taxes
- §2903. State and local taxes
 - §2903-1. Applicability of state and local taxes to the government
- §2904. Contract clauses
 - §2904-1. Management and operating contracts

Subpart 970-30. Cost Accounting Standards

- §3002. CAS program requirements
 - §3002-1. Applicability

Subpart 970-31. Contract Cost Principles and Procedures

- §3101-00-70. Scope of subpart
- §3101-9. Advance agreements (DOE coverage-paragraph (i))
- §3101-10. Cost certification
- §3102-3-70. Home office expenses
- §3102-05. Application of cost principles
- §3102-05-4. Bonding costs. (DOE coverage-paragraph (d))
- §3102-05-6. Compensation for personal services. (DOE coverage-paragraphs (a) and (p))
- §3102-05-18. Independent research and development and bid and proposal costs. (DOE coverage-paragraphs (c))
- §3102-05-19. Insurance and indemnification
- §3102-05-22. Lobbying and political activity costs. (DOE coverage-paragraph(b))
- §3102-05-28. Other business expenses. (DOE coverage-paragraph (i))
- §3102-05-30. Patent costs and technology transfer costs
- §3102-05-33. Professional and consultant service costs. (Department coverage-paragraph (g))
- §3102-05-46. Travel costs
- §3102-05-47. Costs related to legal and other proceedings. (DOE coverage-paragraph (h))
- §3102-05-70. Preexisting conditions
- §3170. Contract clause

Subpart 970-32. Contract Financing

- §3200. Policy
- §3200-1. Reduction or suspension of advance, partial, or progress payments
- §3200-1-1. Contract clause
- §3204. Advance payments
- §3204-1. Applicability
- §3270. Standard financial management clauses

Subpart 970-34. Major System Acquisition

- §3400. General requirements
- §3400-1. Mission-oriented solicitation

Subpart 970-35. Research and Development Contracting

- §3500. Scope of subpart
- §3501. Federally funded research and development centers
- §3501-1. Sponsoring agreements
- §3501-2. Using an FFRDC
- §3501-3. Reviewing FFRDC's
- §3501-4. Contract clause

Subpart 970-36. Construction and Architect-Engineer Contracts

- §3605. Contract clauses
- §3605-1. Other contracts
- §3605-2. Special construction clause for operating contracts

Subpart 970-37. Facilities Management Contracting

- §3770. Facilities management
- §3770-1. Policy
- §3770-2. [Reserved]

Subpart 970-41. Acquisition of Utility Services

§4102. Acquiring utility services

§4102-1. Policy

Subpart 970-42. Contract Administration

§4207-03-02. Certificate of costs

§4207-03-70. Contract clause

§4207-05-01. Contracting officer determination procedure. (DOE coverage-paragraph (b))

Subpart 970-43. Contract Modifications

§4302. Changes

§4302-1. Contract clause

Subpart 970-44. Management and Operating Contractor Purchasing

§4400. Scope

§4401. Responsibilities

§4401-1. General

§4401-2. Review and approval

§4401-3. Advance notification

§4402. Contractor purchasing system

§4402-1. Policy

§4402-2. General requirements

§4402-3. Purchasing from contractor-affiliated sources

§4402-4. Nuclear material transfers

§4403. Contract clause

Subpart 970-45. Government Property

§4501. General

§4501-1. Contract clause

Subpart 970-49. Termination of Contracts

§4905. Contract termination clause

§4905-1. Termination for convenience of the government and default

Subpart 970-50. Extraordinary Contractual Actions

§5004. Residual powers

§5004-1. Contract clause

§5070. Indemnification

§5070-1. Scope and applicability

§5070-2. General

§5070-3. Contract clauses

Subpart 970-52. Solicitation Provisions and Contract Clauses for Management and Operating Contracts

§5200. Scope of subpart

§5201. Text of provisions and clauses

§5203-1. Management controls

§5203-2. Performance improvement and collaboration

§5203-3. Contractor's organization

§5204-1. Counterintelligence

§5204-2. Laws, regulations, and DOE directives
§5204-3. Access to and ownership of records
§5208-1. Printing
§5209-1. Requirement for guarantee of performance
§5211-1. Work authorization
§5215-1. Total available fee: Base fee amount and performance fee amount
§5215-2. [Reserved]
§5215-3. Conditional payment of fee, profit, and other incentives-facility management contracts
§5215-4. Cost reduction
§5215-5. Limitation on fee
§5217-1. Work for Others Program
§5222-1. Collective Bargaining Agreements Management and Operating Contracts
§5222-2. Overtime management
§5223-1. Integration of environment, safety, and health into work planning and execution
§5223-2. Affirmative procurement program
§5223-3. Agreement regarding Workplace Substance Abuse Programs at DOE facilities
§5223-4. Workplace Substance Abuse Programs at DOE Sites
§5223-5. DOE motor vehicle fleet fuel efficiency
§5226-1. Diversity plan
§5226-2. Workforce restructuring under section 3161 of the National Defense Authorization Act for
fiscal year 1993
§5226-3. Community commitment
§5227-1. Rights in data-facilities
§5227-2. Rights in data-technology transfer
§5227-3. Technology transfer mission
§5227-4. Authorization and consent
§5227-5. Notice and assistance regarding patent and copyright infringement
§5227-6. Patent indemnity-subcontracts
§5227-7. Royalty information
§5227-8. Refund of royalties
§5227-9. Notice of right to request patent waiver
§5227-10. Patent rights-management and operating contracts, nonprofit organization or small
business firm contractor
§5227-11. Patent rights-management and operating contracts, for-profit contractor, non-technology
transfer
§5227-12. Patent rights-management and operating contracts, for-profit contractor, advance class
waiver
§5228-1. Insurance-litigation and claims
§5229-1. State and local taxes
§5231-4. Preexisting conditions
§5232-1. Reduction or suspension of advance, partial, or progress payments upon finding of
substantial evidence of fraud
§5232-2. Payments and advances
§5232-3. Accounts, records, and inspection
§5232-4. Obligation of funds
§5232-5. Liability with respect to cost accounting standards
§5232-6. Work for others funding authorization
§5232-7. Financial management system
§5232-8. Integrated accounting
§5235-1. Federally funded research and development center sponsoring agreement
§5236-1. Government facility subcontract approval

§5237-2. [Reserved]
§5242-1. Penalties for unallowable costs
§5243-1. Changes
§5244-1. Contractor purchasing system
§5245-1. Property

Authority:

42 U.S.C. 2201, 2282a, 2282b, 2282c; 42 U.S.C. 7101 *et seq.* ; 41 U.S.C. 418b; 50 U.S.C. 2401 *et seq.*

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36360](#), July 22, 2009.

Source:

[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart 970-01 - Management and Operating Contract Regulatory System

§970.100 Scope of part

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36370](#), July 22, 2009.

This part provides Departmental policies, procedures, provisions, and clauses that implement and supplement the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) and other parts of the Department of Energy Acquisition Regulation (DEAR) for the award and administration of the Department's management and operating contracts, as defined at 48 CFR subpart 17.6. The FAR and other parts of the DEAR apply to management and operating contracts. See [48 CFR 970.5200](#) for guidance regarding which provisions and clauses (from FAR, DEAR Part 970, or other parts of the DEAR) to include in management and operating contracts.

§970.103 Publication and codification

(a) *Organization of part 970.*

(1) To the extent possible, the titles and text of the subparts, sections, and subsections of this part are numbered to correspond with related material that is contained in the FAR.

(2) The number to the left of the decimal point represents the DEAR part number (*i.e.*, 970). The numbers to the right of the decimal point and to the left of the dash represent, in order, the DEAR subpart (first two digits), and the DEAR section number (second two digits). The

numbers to the right of the dash represent the DEAR subsection. A second dash may follow the DEAR subsection number. As applicable, numbers to the right of the second dash represent subordinate subsections.

(3) To the extent practicable, the subpart number corresponds with the FAR part which contains related coverage, and the section number corresponds with the FAR subpart which contains related coverage (*e.g.*, the coverage contained in DEAR 970.0309 corresponds with material contained in FAR 3.9).

(4) Where the FAR does not contain related coverage on a particular subject, the DEAR section number will be numbered using numbers of 70 and up (*e.g.*, 970.0370).

(b) *Special Note Regarding Clause Numbering.* The section number for clauses prescribed in part 970 are numbered to correspond with the subpart in which the clause is prescribed (*e.g.*, 970.5203-1 is prescribed for use at subpart 970.03).

Subpart 970-03 - Improper Business Practices and Personal Conflicts of Interest

§970.309 Whistleblower Protection of Contractor Employees

§970.309-1 Applicability

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36370](#), July 22, 2009.

The contracting officer shall refer to 48 CFR subpart 903.9 regarding the applicability of the DOE Employee Protection Program to management and operating contracts.

§970.370 Management Controls and Improvements

§970.370-1 Policy

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36370](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) Management and operating contractors shall develop and maintain systems of management and quality control to discourage waste, fraud and abuse; and to ensure that components, products, and services that are provided to DOE satisfy the contractor's obligations under the contract.

(b) As a part of the required overall management structure, the contractor must maintain management control systems which, in compliance with the requirements of the clause at [48 CFR 970.5203-1](#):

- (1) Are documented and satisfactory to DOE;
- (2) Ensure that all levels of management are accountable for effective management systems and internal controls within their areas of assigned responsibility;
- (3) Cover both programmatic and administrative functions;
- (4) Provide reasonable assurance that Government resources are safeguarded against theft, fraud, waste, and unauthorized use;
- (5) Promote efficient and effective operations;
- (6) Ensure that all obligations and costs incurred are in compliance with the intended purposes and the terms and conditions of the contract;
- (7) Properly record, manage, and report all revenues, expenditures, transactions and assets;
- (8) Maintain financial, statistical and other reports necessary to maintain accurate, reliable, and timely accountability and management controls;
- (9) Are periodically reviewed to ensure that the systems provide reasonable assurance that the objectives of the system are being accomplished and that these controls are working effectively;
- (10) Are in accordance with the Comptroller General's standards for internal controls, as set forth in the General Accounting Office Policy and Procedures Manual For Guidance to Federal Agencies, (OCT 1984), as amended.

(c) Management and operating contractors shall also develop and maintain a baseline program of quality assurance that will implement documented performance and quality standards, and management controls and assessment techniques to ensure components, services, and products meet DOE's, design criteria and other governing and applicable specifications.

(d) DOE expects all its contractors to seek to identify improvements in any aspect of performance. Management and operating contracts are very large and complex; therefore, the opportunities to identify changes in performance that will increase the effectiveness or efficiency of contract performance are more prevalent than under other contracts. The clause at [48 CFR 970.5203-2](#) requires DOE management and operating contractors to affirmatively seek to identify, evaluate, and institute, where appropriate, processes that will improve the effectiveness or efficiency of any aspect of contract performance. It further requires the contractor to communicate any such improvements to DOE, other management and operating contractors, and DOE major facilities contractors. The contractor is required to participate in efforts by those contractors to address common problems or the institution of improvements. It allows the contractor to enlist the aid of the DOE contracting officer where necessary to institute or communicate the improvements. The obligations under the clause in no way affect the contractor's obligations under other provisions of the contract to notify or acquire the approval of the contracting officer.

§970.370-2 Contract clause

(a) The contracting officer shall insert the clause at 970.5203-1, Management Controls, in all management and operating contracts.

(b) The contracting officer shall insert the clause at 970.5203-2, Performance Improvement and Collaboration, in all management and operating contracts.

§970.371 Conduct of employees of DOE management and operating contractors

§970.371-1 Scope of section

This section establishes the policies for maintaining satisfactory standards of conduct on the part of individuals employed by DOE management and operating contractors.

§970.371-2 Applicability

The policies in this section are applicable to all DOE management and operating contractors.

§970.371-3 Definition

Employees, as used in this section, are defined to mean individuals employed by the contractor, both full and part-time, who are assigned to work under a DOE management and operating contract.

§970.371-4 Gratuities

Employees of a management and operating contractor shall not, under circumstances which might reasonably be interpreted as an attempt to influence the recipients in the conduct of their duties, accept any gratuity or special favor from individuals or organizations with whom the contractor is doing business, or proposing to do business, in accomplishing the work under the contract. Reference is made to the requirements prescribed in [48 CFR 3.502](#).

§970.371-5 Use of privileged information

Management and operating contractor employees shall not use privileged information for personal gain, or make other improper use of privileged information which is acquired in connection with their

employment on contract work. For the purposes of this subsection, the term “privileged information” includes but is not limited to, unpublished information relating to technological and scientific developments; medical, personnel, or security records of individuals; anticipated materials' requirements or pricing action; possible new sites for DOE program operations; internal DOE decisions; policy development; and knowledge of selections of contractors or subcontractors in advance of official announcement.

§970.371-6 Incompatibility between regular duties and private interests

(a) Employees of a management and operating contractor shall not be permitted to make or influence any decisions on behalf of the contractor which directly or indirectly affect the interest of the Government, if the employee's personal concern in the matter may be incompatible with the interest of the Government. For example: An employee of a contractor will not negotiate, or influence the award of, a subcontract with a company in which the individual has an employment relationship or significant financial interest; and an employee of a contractor will not be assigned the preparation of an evaluation for DOE or for any DOE contractor of some technical aspect of the work of another organization with which the individual has an employment relationship, or significant financial interest, or which is a competitor of an organization (other than the contractor who is the individual's regular employer) in which the individual has an employment relationship or significant financial interest.

(b) The contractor shall be responsible for informing employees that they are expected to disclose any incompatibilities between duties performed for the contractor and their private interests and to refer undecided questions to the contractor.

§970.371-7 Outside employment of contractor employees

Employees of a management and operating contractor are entitled to the same rights and privileges with respect to outside employment as other citizens. Therefore, there is no general prohibition against contractor employees having outside employment. However, no employee of a contractor performing work on a full or part-time basis under a DOE management and operating contract may engage in employment outside official hours of duty or while on leave if such employment will:

(a) In any manner interfere with the proper and effective performance of the duties of the position;

(b) Appear to create a conflict-of-interest situation, or

(c) Appear to subject DOE or the contractor to public criticism or embarrassment.

§970.371-8 Employee disclosure concerning other employment services

(a) Management and operating contractors are responsible for requiring its employees to file with the contractor, a written disclosure statement concerning outside employment services which involve the use of information in the area of the employee's employment with the contractor. The disclosure shall

contain such information concerning the outside employment as the contractor may prescribe. As a minimum, the employee's disclosure shall:

- (1) Acknowledge that the employee has read and is familiar with:
 - (i) The requirements and restrictions prescribed in this section,
 - (ii) DOE publication entitled, "Reporting Results of Scientific and Technical Work Funded by DOE", and
 - (iii) The requirements of the contractor's contract with DOE relating to patents.
 - (2) Include information concerning any rate of remuneration significantly in excess of the employee's regular rate of remuneration;
 - (3) Identify any actual or potential conflicts with DOE's policies regarding conduct of employees of DOE's contractors set forth in this section;
 - (4) Address any potential impacts that such employment may have on the contractor's responsibility to report fully and promptly to DOE all significant research and development information; and
 - (5) Identify any potential conflicts such employment may have with the patent provisions of the contractor's contract with DOE.
- (b) The contractor shall provide a copy of all disclosures to the contracting officer.

§970.371-9 Contract clause

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36370](#), July 22, 2009.

The contracting officer shall insert the clause at 970.5203-3, Contractor's Organization, in all management and operating contracts. The approval authority of the Secretary of Energy required in paragraph (c) may not be delegated. In paragraph (a) the words "and managerial personnel (see [48 CFR 970.5245-1\(j\)](#))" may be inserted after "(see [48 CFR 952.215-70](#))".

Subpart 970-04 - Administrative Matters

§970.404 Safeguarding classified information

§970.404-1 Definitions

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36370](#), July 22, 2009.

Access Authorization means an administrative determination that an individual is eligible for access to classified information or is eligible for access to, or control over, special nuclear material.

Classified Information means any information or material that is owned by or produced for, or is under the control of the United States Government, and determined pursuant to provisions of Executive Order 12356 of April 2, 1982 ([3 CFR, 1982 Comp.](#), p. 166), or prior orders, or as authorized under the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, to require protection against unauthorized disclosure, and is so designated.

Counterintelligence means information gathered and activities conducted to protect against espionage, other intelligence activities, sabotage, or assassinations conducted for or on behalf of foreign powers, organizations or persons, or international terrorist activities, but not including personnel, physical, document or communication security programs.

Facility Clearance means an administrative determination that a facility is eligible to access, produce, use or store classified information or special nuclear material.

Restricted Data means all data concerning design, manufacture, or utilization of atomic weapons; the production of special nuclear material; or the use of special nuclear material in the production of energy; but shall not include data declassified or removed from the Restricted Data category pursuant to section 142 of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, ([42 U.S.C. 2162](#)).

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [67 FR 14878](#), Mar. 28, 2002]

§970.404-2 General

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36370](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) Guidance regarding the National Industrial Security Program as implemented by the Department of Energy may be found at 904.4, Safeguarding Classified Information Within Industry. Additional information concerning contractor ownership when national security or atomic energy information is involved may be found at 904.70. Information regarding contractor ownership involving national security program contracts may be found at 904.71.

(b) Executive Order 12333, United States Intelligence Activities, provides for the organization and control of United States foreign intelligence and counterintelligence activities. DOE has established a counterintelligence program subject to this Executive Order which is described in DOE Order 5670.3 (as amended). All DOE elements, including management and operating contractors and other contractors managing DOE-owned facilities which require access authorizations, should undertake the

necessary precautions to ensure that DOE and covered Contractor personnel, programs and resources are properly protected from foreign intelligence threats and activities.

(c) For DOE management and operating contracts and other contracts designated by the Procurement Executive, or designee, the clause entitled, “Conditional Payment of Fee, Profit, and Other Incentives-Facility Management Contracts,” implements the requirements of section 234B of the Atomic Energy Act (see [48 CFR 904.402\(c\)\(1\)](#)) for the use of a contract clause that provides for an appropriate reduction in the fee or amount paid to the contractor under the contract in the event of a violation by the contractor or any contractor employee of any rule, regulation, or order relating to the safeguarding or security of Restricted Data or other classified information. The clause, in part, provides for reductions in the amount of fee, profit, or share of cost savings that is otherwise earned by the contractor for performance failures relating to the safeguarding of Restricted Data and other classified information.

[[67 FR 14878](#), Mar. 28, 2002, as amended at [68 FR 68781](#), Dec. 10, 2003]

§970.404-3 Responsibilities of contracting officers

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) Management and operating contracts which may require the processing or storage of Restricted Data or Special Nuclear Material require application of the applicable DOE Directives in the safeguards and security series.

(b) The contracting officer shall refer to [48 CFR 904.71](#) for guidance concerning the prohibition on award of a DOE contract under a national security program to a company owned by an entity controlled by a foreign government when access to proscribed information is required to perform the contract.

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [67 FR 14878](#), Mar. 28, 2002]

§970.404-4 Solicitation provision and contract clauses

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) The contracting officer shall insert the clause at 970.5204-1, Counterintelligence, into all management and operating contracts and other contracts for the management of DOE-owned facilities which include the security and classification/declassification clauses.

(b) The contracting officer shall refer to [48 CFR 904.404](#) and [48 CFR 904.7103](#) for the prescription of solicitation provisions and contract clauses relating to safeguarding classified information and foreign ownership, control, or influence over contractors.

§970.407 Contractor records retention

§970.407-1 Applicability

§970.407-1-1 Alternate retention schedules

Records produced under the Department's contracts involving management and operation responsibilities relative to DOE-owned or -leased facilities are to be retained and disposed of in accordance with the guidance contained in DOE G 1324.5B, Records Management Program and DOE Records Schedules (see current version), rather than those set forth at 48 CFR subpart 4.7, Contractor Records Retention.

§970.407-1-2 Access to and ownership of records

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

Contracting officers may agree to contractor ownership of certain categories of records designated in the instruction contained in paragraph (b) of the clause at [48 CFR 970.5204-3](#), Access to and Ownership of Records, provided the Government's rights to inspect, copy, and audit these records are not limited. These rights must be retained by the Government in order to carry out the Department's statutory responsibilities required by the Atomic Energy Act and other statutes for oversight of its contractors, including compliance with the Department's health, safety and reporting requirements, and protection of the public interest.

§970.407-1-3 Contract clause

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

The contracting officer shall insert the clause at [48 CFR 970.5204-3](#), Access to and Ownership of Records, in management and operating contracts.

§970.470 Department of Energy Directives

§970.470-1 General

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) The contractor is required to comply with the requirements of applicable Federal, State and local laws and regulations, unless relief has been granted by the appropriate authority. For informational purposes, the contracting officer may append the contract with a list of applicable laws or regulations (see 970.5204-2, Laws, Regulations, and DOE Directives, paragraph (a)).

(b) The Department of Energy Directives System is a system of instructions, including orders, notices, manuals, guides, and standards, for Departmental elements. In certain circumstances, requirements contained in these directives may apply to a contractor through operation of a contract clause. Program and requirements personnel are responsible for identifying requirements in the Directives Program which are applicable to a contract, and for developing a list of applicable requirements and providing it to the contracting officer for inclusion in the contract.

(c) Where directives requirements are established using either the Standards/Requirements Identification Process or the Work Smart Standards Process, the applicable process should also be used to establish the environment, safety, and health portion of the list identified in paragraph (b) of this section.

(d) Environmental, safety, and health (ES&H) requirements appropriate for work conducted under a management and operating contract may be determined by a DOE approved process to evaluate the work and the associated hazards, and identify an appropriately tailored set of standards, practices, and controls, such as a tailoring process included in a DOE approved Safety Management System implemented under [48 CFR 970.5223-1](#), Integration of Environment, Safety, and Health into Work Planning and Execution. When such a process is used, the contracting officer shall ensure that the set of tailored requirements, as approved by DOE pursuant to the process, is incorporated into the list identified in paragraph (b) of this section. These requirements shall supersede, in whole or in part, the contractual environmental, safety, and health requirements previously made applicable to the contract by List B. If the tailored set of requirements identifies an alternative requirement which varies from an ES&H requirement of an otherwise applicable law or regulation, the contractor must request an exemption or other appropriate regulatory relief that may be specified in the governing regulation.

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [74 FR 23127](#), May 18, 2009]

§970.470-2 Contract clause

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

The contracting officer shall insert the clause at DEAR 970.5204-2, Laws, Regulations, and DOE Directives, in management and operating contracts. The contracting officer may modify the clause to indicate the location in the contract of List A, List B, or both.

Subpart 970-08 - Required Sources of Supplies and Services

§970.801 Excess personal property

§970.801-1 Policy

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

The provisions of 48 CFR subpart 8.1 (Federal Acquisition Regulation), [41 CFR 101-43](#) (Federal Property Management Regulation), and [41 CFR 109-43](#) (DOE Property Management Regulation) apply to DOE's management and operating contracts.

§970.808 Acquisition of printing

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

§970.808-1 Scope of section

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

This section prescribes the Department's policy concerning duplicating or printing services which may be required in the performance of management and operating contracts.

§970.808-2 Policy

Management and operating contractors shall provide or secure duplication and printing services in accordance with the Government Printing and Binding Regulations, Title 44 of the U.S. Code, and applicable DOE Directives.

§970.808-3 Contract clause

The contracting officer shall insert the clause at 970.5208-1, Printing, in all management and operating contracts.

Subpart 970-09 - Contractor Qualifications

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

§970.905 Organizational conflicts of interest

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

Management and operating contracts shall contain an organizational conflict of interest clause substantially similar to the clause at [48 CFR 952.209-72](#), Organizational Conflicts of Interest, and which is appropriate to the statement of work of the individual contract. In addition, the contracting officer shall assure that the clause contains appropriate restraints on intra-corporate relations between the contractor's organization and personnel operating the Department's facility and its parent corporate body and affiliates. Such restraints shall include personnel access to the facility, technical transfer of information from the facility, and the availability from the facility of other advantages flowing from performance of the contract. The contracting officer is responsible for ensuring that M&O contractors adopt policies and procedures in the award of subcontracts that will meet the Department's need to safeguard against a biased work product and an unfair competitive advantage. To this end, the organizational conflicts of interest clause in management and operating contracts shall include Alternate I.

§970.970 Performance guarantees

§970.970-1 Determination of responsibility

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) In the award of a management and operating contract, the contracting officer shall determine that the prospective contractor is a responsible contractor and is capable of providing all necessary financial, personnel, and other resources in performance of the contract.

(b) DOE contracts with entities that have been created solely for the purpose of performing a specific management and operating contract. Generally, such newly created entities will have very limited financial and other resources. In such instances, when making the determination of responsibility required under this section, the contracting officer may evaluate the financial resources of other entities only to the extent that those entities are legally bound, jointly and severally if more than one, by means of a performance guarantee or other equivalent enforceable commitment to supply the necessary resources to the prospective contractor and to assume all contractual obligations of the prospective contractor. A performance guarantee should be the means used unless an equivalent degree of commitment can be obtained by an alternative means.

(c) The guaranteeing corporate entity(ies) must be found to have sufficient resources in order to satisfy its guarantee.

§970.970-2 Solicitation provision

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

The contracting officer shall insert the provision at [48 CFR 970.5209-1](#), Requirement for Guarantee of Performance, in solicitations when the awardee will be required to be organized solely for performance of the requirement.

Subpart 970-11 - Describing Agency Needs

§970.1100 Policy

§970.1100-1 Performance-based contracting

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) It is the policy of the Department of Energy to use, to the maximum extent practicable, performance-based contracting methods in its management and operating contracts. Office of Federal Procurement Policy Letter 91-2 provides guidance concerning the development and use of performance-based contracting concepts and methodologies that may be generally applied to management and operating contracts. Performance-based contracts: Describe performance requirements in terms of results rather than methods of accomplishing the work; use measurable (*i.e.*, terms of quality, timeliness, quantity) performance standards and objectives and quality assurance surveillance plans; provide performance incentives (positive or negative) where appropriate; and specify procedures for award or incentive fee reduction when work activities are not performed or do not meet contract requirements.

(b) The use of performance-based statements of work, where feasible, is the preferred method for establishing work requirements. Such statements of work and other documents used to establish work requirements (such as work authorization directives) should describe performance requirements and expectations in terms of outcome, results, or final work products, as opposed to methods, processes, or design.

(c) Contract performance requirements and expectations should be consistent with the Department's strategic planning goals and objectives, as made applicable to the site or facility through Departmental

programmatic and financial planning processes. Measurable performance criteria, objective measures, and where appropriate, performance incentives, shall be structured to correspond to the performance requirements established in the statement of work and other documents used to establish work requirements.

(d) Quality assurance surveillance plans shall be developed to facilitate the assessment of contractor performance and ensure the appropriateness of any award or incentive fee payment. Such plans shall be tailored to the contract performance objectives, criteria, and measures, and shall, to the maximum extent practicable, focus on the level of performance required by the performance objectives rather than the methodology used by the contractor to achieve that level of performance.

§970.1100-2 Additional considerations

(a) While it is not feasible to set forth standard language which would apply to every contract situation, language must be designed for inclusion in a management and operating contract to describe clearly the work being undertaken; the controls, as appropriate, to be exercised by DOE over the performance of that work; and the relationship contemplated between the parties.

(b) The language shall also include the following with respect to subcontracting performance of the work described pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section: “The contractor shall, when directed by DOE and may, but only when authorized by DOE, enter into subcontracts for the performance of any part of the work under this clause.”

(c) The provisions required in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section shall be set forth in the statement of work of the contract.

§970.1103-4 Contract clause

Insert the clause at [48 CFR 52.211-5](#), Material Requirements, in solicitations and contracts.

§970.1170 Work authorization

§970.1170-1 Policy

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

Each contract for the management and operation of a DOE site or facility, and other contracts designated by the DOE or NNSA Procurement Executive, must contain a scope of work section that describes, in general terms, work planned and/or required to be performed. Work to be performed under the contract shall be assigned through the use of a work authorization to control individual work activities performed within the scope of work. Work authorizations must be issued prior to the

commencement of the work and incurrence of any costs.

[[72 FR 29434](#), May 29, 2007]

§970.1170-2 Contract provision

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

The Contracting Officer shall insert the clause at [48 CFR 970.5211-1](#), Work authorization, in each solicitation and contract for the management and operation of a DOE site or facility and in other contracts designated by the DOE or NNSA Procurement Executive.

[[72 FR 49434](#), May 29, 2007]

Subpart 970-15 - Contracting by Negotiation

§970.1504 Contract pricing

§970.1504-1 Price analysis

§970.1504-1-1 Fees for management and operating contracts

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

This subsection sets forth the Department's policies on fees for management and operating contracts and may be applied to other contracts as determined by the Procurement Executive, or designee.

§970.1504-1-2 Fee policy

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) DOE management and operating contractors may be paid a fee in accordance with the requirements of this subsection.

(b) There are three basic principles underlying the Department's fee policy:

(1) The amount of available fee should reflect the financial risk assumed by the contractor.

(2) It is the policy of the Department, when work elements cannot be fixed price, incentive fees (including award fees) tied to objective measures should be used to the maximum extent appropriate.

(3) When work elements cannot be fixed price and award fees are employed, they should be tied to either objective or subjective measures. Each measure should, to the maximum extent appropriate, be directly tied to a specific portion of the fee pool.

(c) Fee objectives and amounts are to be determined for each contract. Standard fees or across-the-board fee agreements will not be used or made. Due to the nature of funding management and operating contracts, it is anticipated that fee shall be established in accordance with the annual funding cycle; however, with the prior approval of the Procurement Executive, or designee, a longer period may be used where necessary to incentivize performance objectives that span funding cycles or to optimize cost reduction efforts.

(d) Annual fee amounts shall be established in accordance with this subsection. Annual amounts shall not exceed maximum amounts derived from the appropriate fee schedule (and Classification Factor, if applicable) unless approved in advance by the Procurement Executive, or designee. In no event shall any fee exceed statutory limits imposed by [41 U.S.C. 254\(b\)](#).

(e)

(1) Contracting Officers shall include negative fee incentives in contracts when appropriate. A negative fee incentive is one in which the contractor will not be paid the full target fee amount when the actual performance level falls below the target level established in the contract.

(2) Negative fee incentives may only be used when:

(i) A target level of performance can be established, which the contractor can reasonably be expected to reach;

(ii) The value of the negative incentive is commensurate with the lower level of performance and any additional administrative costs;

(iii) Factors likely to prevent attainment of the target level of performance are clearly within the control of the contractor; and

(iv) The contract indicates clearly a level below which performance is not acceptable.

(f) Prior to the issuance of a competitive solicitation or the initiation of negotiations for an extension of an existing contract, the HCA shall coordinate the maximum available fee, as allowed by [48 CFR](#)

970.1504-1-1, and the fee amount targeted for negotiation, if less, with the Procurement Executive, or designee. Solicitations shall identify maximum available fee under the contract and may invite offerors to propose fee less than the maximum available.

(g) When a contract subject to this subsection requires a contractor to use its own facilities or equipment, or other resources to make its own cost investment for contract performance, (*e.g.*, when there is no letter-of-credit financing) consideration may be given, subject to approval by the Procurement Executive, or designee, to increasing the total available fee amount above that otherwise provided by this subsection.

(h) Multiple fee arrangements should be used in accordance with [48 CFR 970.1504-1-4](#).

(i)

(1) In addition to other performance requirements specified in the contract, DOE management and operating contractors and other contractors designated by the Procurement Executive, or designee, are subject to performance requirements relating to: environment, safety, and health (ES&H), including worker safety and health (WS&H); and safeguarding of Restricted Data and other classified information. Performance requirements relating to ES&H will be set forth in the contract's ES&H terms and conditions, including a DOE approved Integrated Safety Management System (ISMS), or similar document. As applicable, performance requirements relating to the safeguarding of Restricted Data and other classified information will be set forth in the clauses of the contract entitled "Security" and "Laws, Regulations, and DOE Directives," as well as in other terms and conditions that prescribe requirements for the safeguarding of Restricted Data and other classified information.

(2) If the contractor does not meet the performance requirements of the contract relating to ES&H or to the safeguarding of Restricted Data and other classified information, otherwise earned fee, fixed fee, profit, or share of cost savings may be unilaterally reduced by the contracting officer in accordance with the clause entitled "Conditional Payment of Fee, Profit, and Other Incentives-Facility Management Contracts."

(3) The clause entitled "Conditional Payment of Fee, Profit, and Other Incentives-Facility Management Contracts," provides for reductions of earned fee, fixed fee, profit, or share of cost savings under the contract depending upon the severity of the contractor's performance failure relating to ES&H requirements and, if applicable, relating to the safeguarding of Restricted Data and other classified information. When reviewing performance failures that would otherwise warrant a potential reduction of earned fee, fixed fee, profit, or share of cost savings, the contracting officer must consider mitigating factors that may warrant a reduction below the applicable range specified in the clause. Some of the mitigating factors that must be considered are included in the clause.

(4) The contracting officer must obtain the concurrence of the cognizant Program Secretarial Officer

(i) Prior to effecting any reduction of fee or profit in accordance with the terms and conditions of the clause entitled, "Conditional Payment of Fee, Profit, and Other Incentives-Facility Management Contracts;" and

(ii) For determinations that no reduction of fee or profit is warranted for a particular

performance failure(s) that would otherwise be subject to a reduction.

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [68 FR 68781](#), Dec. 10, 2003]

§970.1504-1-3 Special considerations: Laboratory management and operation

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) For the management and operation of a laboratory, the contracting officer shall consider whether any fee is appropriate. Considerations should include:

- (1) The nature and extent of financial or other liability or risk assumed or to be assumed under the contract;
- (2) The proportion of retained earnings (as established under generally accepted accounting methods) that are utilized to fund the performance of work related to the DOE contracted effort;
- (3) Facilities capital or capital equipment acquisition plans;
- (4) Other funding needs, to include contingency funding, working capital funding, and provision for funding unreimbursed costs deemed ordinary and necessary;
- (5) The utility of fee as a performance incentive; and
- (6) The need for fee to attract qualified contractors, organizations, and institutions.

(b) In the event fee is considered appropriate, the contracting officer shall determine the amount of fee in accordance with this subsection.

(1) Costs incurred in the operation of a laboratory that are allowable and allocable under the cost principles (*i.e.*, commercial using [48 CFR 31.2](#), nonprofit using OMB Circular A-122, or university-affiliated using OMB Circular A-21), regulations (including [48 CFR 970.31](#)), or statutes applicable to the operating contractor should be classified as direct or indirect (overhead or G&A) charges to the contract and not included as proposed fee. Exceptions must be approved by the Procurement Executive, or designee.

(2) Except as specified in [48 CFR 970.1504-1-3\(c\)\(3\)](#), the maximum total amount of fee shall be calculated in accordance with [48 CFR 970.1504-1-5](#) or [48 CFR 970.1504-1-9](#), as appropriate. The total amount of fee under any laboratory management and operating contract or other designated contract shall not exceed, and may be significantly less than, the result of that calculation. In determining the total amount of fee, the contracting officer shall consider the evaluation of the factors in paragraph (a) of this subsection as well as any benefits the laboratory operator will receive due to its tax status.

(c) In the event fee is considered appropriate, the contracting officer shall establish the type of fee

arrangement in accordance with this subsection.

(1) The amount of fee may be established as total available fee with a base fee portion and a performance fee portion. Base fee, if any, shall be an amount in recognition of the risk of financial liability assumed by the contractor and shall not exceed the cost risk associated with those liabilities or the amount calculated in accordance with [48 CFR 970.1504-1-5](#), whichever is less. The total available fee, excepting any base fee, shall normally be associated with performance at or above the target level of performance as defined by the contract. If performance in either of the two general work categories appropriate for laboratories (science/technology and support) is rated at less than the target level of performance, the total amount of the available fee shall be subject to downward adjustment. Such downward adjustment shall be subject to the terms of the clause at [48 CFR 970.5215-3](#), Conditional Payment of Fee, Profit, and Other Incentives-Facility Management Contracts, if contained in the contract.

(2) The amount of fee may be established as a fixed fee in recognition of the risk of financial liability to be assumed by the contractor, with such fixed fee amount not exceeding the cost risk associated with the liabilities assumed or the amount of fee calculated in accordance with [48 CFR 970.1504-1-5](#), whichever is less.

(3) If the fixed fee or total available fee exceeds 75% of the fee that would be calculated per [48 CFR 970.1504-1-5](#) or [48 CFR 970.1504-1-9](#); or if a fee arrangement other than one of those set forth in paragraphs (c) (1) or (2) of this subsection is considered appropriate, the approval of the Procurement Executive, or designee, shall be obtained prior to its use.

(4) Fee, if any, as well as the type of fee arrangement, will normally be established for the life of the contract. It will be established at time of award, as part of the extend/compete decision, at the time of option exercise, or at such other time as the parties can mutually reach agreement, *e.g.*, negotiations. Such agreement shall require the approval of the Procurement Executive, or designee.

(5) Fee established for longer than one year shall be subject to adjustment in the event of a significant change (greater than $\pm 10\%$ or a lesser amount if appropriate) to the budget or work scope.

(6) Retained earnings (reserves) shall be identified and a plan for their use and disposition developed.

(7) The use of retained earnings as a result of performance of laboratory management and operation may be restricted if the operator is an educational institution.

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [68 FR 68781](#), Dec. 10, 2003]

§970.1504-1-4 Types of contracts and fee arrangements

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) Contract types and fee arrangements suitable for management and operating contracts may include cost, cost-plus-fixed-fee, cost-plus-award-fee, cost-plus-incentive-fee, fixed-price incentive, firm-fixed-price or any combination thereof (see [48 CFR 16.1](#)). In accordance with [48 CFR 970.1504-1-2\(b\)\(1\)](#), the fee arrangement chosen for each work element should reflect the financial risk for project failure that contractors are willing to accept. Contracting officials shall structure each contract and the elements of the work in such a manner that the risk is manageable and, therefore, assumable by the contractor.

(b) Consistent with the concept of a performance-based management contract, those contract types which incentivize performance and cost control are preferred over a cost-plus-fixed-fee arrangement. Accordingly, a cost-plus-fixed-fee contract in instances other than those set forth in [48 CFR 970.1504-1-3\(c\)\(2\)](#) may only be used when approved in advance by the Procurement Executive, or designee.

(c) A cost-plus-award-fee contract is generally the appropriate contract type for a management and operating contract.

(1) Where work cannot be adequately defined to the point that a fixed price contract is acceptable, the attainment of acquisition objectives generally will be enhanced by using a cost-plus-award-fee contract or other incentive fee arrangement to effectively motivate the contractor to superior performance and to provide the Department with flexibility to evaluate actual performance and the conditions under which it was achieved.

(2) The construct of fee for a cost-plus-award-fee management and operating contract is that total available fee will equal a base fee amount and a performance fee amount. The total available fee amount including the performance fee amount the contractor may earn, in whole or in part during performance, shall be established annually (or as otherwise agreed to by the parties and approved by the Procurement Executive, or designee), in an amount sufficient to motivate performance excellence.

(3) However, consistent with concepts of performance-based contracting, it is Departmental policy to place fee at risk based on performance. Accordingly, a base fee amount will be available only when approved in advance by the Procurement Executive, or designee, except as permitted in [48 CFR 970.1504-1-3\(c\)\(1\)](#). Any base fee amount shall be fixed, expressed as a percent of the total available fee at inception of the contract, and shall not exceed that percent during the life of the contract.

(4) The performance fee amount may consist of an objective fee component and a subjective fee component. Objective performance measures, when appropriately applied, provide greater incentives for superior performance than do subjective performance measures and should be used to the maximum extent appropriate. Subjective measures should be used when it is not feasible to devise effective predetermined objective measures applicable to cost, technical performance, or schedule for particular work elements.

(d) Consistent with performance-based contracting concepts, performance objectives and measures related to performance fee should be as clearly defined as possible and, where feasible, expressed in terms of desired performance results or outcomes. Specific measures for determining performance achievement should be used. The contract should identify the amount and allocation of fee to each performance result or outcome.

(e) Because the nature and complexity of the work performed under a management and operating

contract may be varied, opportunities may exist to utilize multiple contract types and fee arrangements. Consistent with paragraph (a) of this subsection and [48 CFR 16.1](#), the contracting officer should apply that contract type or fee arrangement most appropriate to the work component. However, multiple contract types or fee arrangements:

(1) Must conform to the requirements of [48 CFR part 915](#) and [48 CFR parts 15](#) and 16, and

(2) Where appropriate to the type, must be supported by:

(i) Negotiated costs subject to the requirements of the Truth in Negotiations Act,

(ii) A pre-negotiation memorandum, and

(iii) A plan describing how each contract type or fee arrangement will be administered.

(f) Cost reduction incentives are addressed in the clause at [48 CFR 970.5215-4](#), Cost Reduction. This clause provides for incentives for quantifiable cost reductions associated with contractor proposed changes to a design, process, or method that has an established cost, technical, and schedule baseline, is defined, and is subject to a formal control procedure. The clause is to be included in management and operating contracts as appropriate. Proposed changes must be: Initiated by the contractor, innovative, applied to a specific project or program, and not otherwise included in an incentive under the contract. Such cost reduction incentives do not constitute fee and are not subject to statutory or regulatory fee limitations; however, they are subject to all appropriate requirements set forth in this subpart.

(g) Operations and field offices shall take the lead in developing and implementing the most appropriate pricing arrangement or cost reduction incentive for the requirements. Pricing arrangements which provide incentives for performance and cost control are preferred over those that do not. The operations and field offices are to ensure that the necessary resources and infrastructure exist within both the contractor's and government's organizations to prepare, evaluate, and administer the pricing arrangement or cost reduction incentive prior to its implementation.

§970.1504-1-5 General considerations and techniques for determining fixed fees

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) The Department's fee policy recognizes that fee is remuneration to contractors for the entrepreneurial function of organizing and managing resources, the use of their resources (including capital resources), and, as appropriate, their assumption of the risk that some incurred costs (operating and capital) may not be reimbursed.

(b) Use of a purely cost-based structured approach for determining fee objectives and amounts for DOE management and operating contracts is inappropriate considering the limited level of contractor cost, capital goods, and operating capital outlays for performance of such contracts. Instead of being solely cost-based, the desirable approach calls for a structure that allows evaluation of the following eight significant factors, as outlined in order of importance, and the assignment of appropriate fee values (subject to the limitations on fixed fee in [48 CFR 970.1504-1-6](#)):

- (1) The presence or absence of financial risk, including the type and terms of the contract;
- (2) The relative difficulty of work, including specific performance objectives, environment, safety and health concerns, and the technical and administrative knowledge, and skill necessary for work accomplishment and experience;
- (3) Management risk relating to performance, including:
 - (i) Composite risk and complexity of principal work tasks required to do the job;
 - (ii) Labor intensity of the job;
 - (iii) Special control problems; and
 - (iv) Advance planning, forecasting and other such requirements;
- (4) Degree and amount of contract work required to be performed by and with the contractor's own resources, as compared to the nature and degree of subcontracting and the relative complexity of subcontracted efforts, subcontractor management and integration;
- (5) Size and operation (number of locations, plants, differing operations, etc.);
- (6) Influence of alternative investment opportunities available to the contractor (*i.e.*, the extent to which undertaking a task for the Government displaces a contractor's opportunity to make a profit with the same staff and equipment in some other field of activity);
- (7) Benefits which may accrue to the contractor from gaining experience and knowledge of how to do something, from establishing or enhancing a reputation, or from having the opportunity to hold or expand a staff whose loyalties are primarily to the contractor; and
- (8) Other special considerations, including support of Government programs such as those relating to small and minority business subcontracting, energy conservation, etc.

(c) The total fee objective for a particular annual fixed fee negotiation is established by evaluating the factors in this subsection, assigning fee values to them, and totaling the resulting amounts (subject to limitations on total fixed fee in [48 CFR 970.1504-1-6](#)).

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000]

§970.1504-1-6 Calculating fixed fee

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) In recognition of the complexities of the fee determination process, and to assist in promoting a reasonable degree of consistency and uniformity in its application, the following fee schedules set forth the maximum amounts of fee that contracting activities are allowed to award for a particular fixed fee transaction calculated annually.

(b) Fee schedules representing the maximum allowable annual fixed fee available under management and operating contracts have been established for the following management and operating contract efforts:

- (1) Production;
- (2) Research and Development; and
- (3) Environmental Management.

(c) The schedules are:

PRODUCTION EFFORTS

Fee base (dollars)	Fee (dollars)	Fee (percent)	Incr. (percent)
Up to \$1 Million			7.66
1,000,000	\$76,580	7.66	6.78
3,000,000	212,236	7.07	6.07
5,000,000	333,670	6.67	4.90
10,000,000	578,726	5.79	4.24
15,000,000	790,962	5.27	3.71
25,000,000	1,161,828	4.65	3.35
40,000,000	1,663,974	4.16	2.92
60,000,000	2,247,076	3.75	2.57
80,000,000	2,761,256	3.45	2.34
100,000,000	3,229,488	3.23	1.45
150,000,000	3,952,622	2.64	1.12
200,000,000	4,510,562	2.26	0.61
300,000,000	5,117,732	1.71	0.53
400,000,000	5,647,228	1.41	0.45
500,000,000	6,097,956	1.22	
Over \$500 Million	6,097,956		0.45

RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT EFFORTS

--	--	--	--

Fee base (dollars)	Fee (dollars)	Fee (percent)	Incr. (percent)
Up to \$1 Million			8.42
1,000,000	84,238	8.42	7.00
3,000,000	224,270	7.48	6.84
5,000,000	361,020	7.22	6.21
10,000,000	671,716	6.72	5.71
15,000,000	957,250	6.38	4.85
25,000,000	1,441,892	5.77	4.22
40,000,000	2,075,318	5.19	3.69
60,000,000	2,813,768	4.69	3.27
80,000,000	3,467,980	4.33	2.69
100,000,000	4,006,228	4.01	1.69
150,000,000	4,850,796	3.23	1.14
200,000,000	5,420,770	2.71	0.66
300,000,000	6,083,734	2.03	0.58
400,000,000	6,667,930	1.67	0.50
500,000,000	7,172,264	1.43	
Over \$500 Million	7,172,264		0.50

ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT EFFORTS

Fee base (dollars)	Fee (dollars)	Fee (percent)	Incr. (percent)
Up to \$1 Million			7.33
\$1,000,000	73,298	7.33	6.49
3,000,000	203,120	6.77	5.95
5,000,000	322,118	6.44	5.40
10,000,000	592,348	5.92	4.83
15,000,000	833,654	5.56	4.03
25,000,000	1,236,340	4.95	3.44
40,000,000	1,752,960	4.38	3.29

60,000,000	2,411,890	4.02	3.10
80,000,000	3,032,844	3.79	2.49
100,000,000	3,530,679	3.53	1.90
150,000,000	4,479,366	2.99	1.48
200,000,000	5,219,924	2.61	1.12
300,000,000	6,337,250	2.11	0.88
400,000,000	7,219,046	1.80	0.75
500,000,000	7,972,396	1.59	0.58
750,000,000	9,423,463	1.26	0.55
1,000,000,000	10,786,788	1.08	
Over \$1.0 billion	10,786,788		0.55

§970.1504-1-7 Fee Base

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) The fee base is an estimate of necessary allowable costs, with some exclusions. It is used in the fee schedules to determine the maximum annual fee for a fixed fee contract. That portion of the fee base that represents the cost of the Production, Research and Development, or Environmental Management work to be performed, shall be exclusive of the cost of source and special nuclear materials; estimated costs of land, buildings and facilities whether to be leased, purchased or constructed; depreciation of Government facilities; and any estimate of effort for which a separate fee is to be negotiated.

(b) Such portion of the fee base, in addition to the adjustments in paragraph (a) of this subsection, shall exclude:

- (1) Any part of the estimated cost of capital equipment (other than special equipment) which the contractor procures by subcontract or other similar costs which is of such magnitude or nature as to distort the technical and management effort actually required of the contractor;
- (2) At least 20% of the estimated cost or price of subcontracts and other major contractor procurements;
- (3) Up to 100% of the estimated cost or price of subcontracts and other major contractor procurements if they are of a magnitude or nature as to distort the technical and management effort actually required of the contractor;

- (4) Special equipment as defined in [48 CFR 970.1504-1-8](#);
- (5) Estimated cost of Government-furnished property, services and equipment;
- (6) All estimates of costs not directly incurred by or reimbursed to the operating contractor;
- (7) Estimates of home office or corporate general and administrative expenses that shall be reimbursed through the contract;
- (8) Estimates of any independent research and development cost or bid and proposal expenses that may be approved under the contract;
- (9) Any cost of work funded with uncosted balances previously included in a fee base of this or any other contract performed by the contractor;
- (10) Cost of rework attributable to the contractor; and
- (11) State taxes.

(c) In calculating the annual fee amounts associated with the Production, Research and Development, or Environmental Management work to be performed, the fee base is to be allocated to the category reflecting the work to be performed and the appropriate fee schedule utilized.

(d) The portion of the fee base associated with the Production, Research and Development, or Environmental Management work to be performed and the associated schedules in this part are not intended to reflect the portion of the fee base or related compensation for unusual architect-engineer, construction services, or special equipment provided by the management and operating contractor. Architect-engineer and construction services are normally covered by special agreements based on the policies applying to architect-engineer or construction contracts. Fees paid for such services shall be calculated using the provisions of [48 CFR 91504-1-5](#) relating to architect-engineer or construction fees and shall be in addition to the operating fees calculated for the Production, Research and Development, or Environmental Management work to be performed. Special equipment purchases shall be addressed in accordance with the provisions of [48 CFR 970.1504-1-8](#) relating to special equipment.

(e) No schedule set forth in [48 CFR 915.404-4-71-5](#) or [48 CFR 970.1504-1-6](#) shall be used more than once in the determination of the fee amount for an annual period, unless prior approval of the Procurement Executive, or designee, is obtained.

§970.1504-1-8 Special equipment purchases

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) Special equipment is sometimes procured in conjunction with management and operating contracts. When a contractor procures special equipment, the DOE negotiating official shall determine separate fees for the equipment which shall not exceed the maximum fee allowable as established using the schedule in [48 CFR 915.404-4-71-5\(h\)](#).

(b) In determining appropriate fees, factors such as complexity of equipment, ratio of procurement transactions to volume of equipment to be purchased and completeness of services should be considered. Where possible, the reasonableness of the fees should be checked by their relationship to actual costs of comparable procurement services.

(c) For purposes of this subsection, special equipment is equipment for which the purchase price is of such a magnitude compared to the cost of installation as to distort the amount of technical direction and management effort required of the contractor. Special equipment is of a nature that requires less management attention. When a contractor procures special equipment, the DOE negotiating official shall determine separate fees for the equipment using the schedule in [48 CFR 915.404-4-71-5\(h\)](#). The determination of specific items of equipment in this category requires application of judgment and careful study of the circumstances involved in each project. This category of equipment would generally include:

(1) Major items of prefabricated process or research equipment; and

(2) Major items of preassembled equipment such as packaged boilers, generators, machine tools, and large electrical equipment. In some cases, it would also include special apparatus or devices such as reactor vessels and reactor charging machines.

§970.1504-1-9 Special considerations: Cost-plus-award-fee

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36371](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) When a management and operating contract is to be awarded on a cost-plus-award-fee basis, several special considerations are appropriate.

(b) All annual performance incentives identified under these contracts are funded from the annual total available fee, which consists of a base fee amount (which may be zero) and a performance fee amount (which typically will consist of an incentive fee component for objective performance requirements, an award fee component for subjective performance requirements, or both).

(c) The annual total available fee for the contract shall equal the product of the fee(s) that would have been calculated for an annual fixed fee contract and the classification factor(s) most appropriate for the facility/task. If more than one fee schedule is applicable to the contract, the annual total available fee shall be the sum of the available fees derived proportionately from each fee schedule; consideration of significant factors applicable to each fee schedule; and application of a Classification Factor(s) most appropriate for the work.

(d) Classification Factors applied to each Facility/Task Category are:

Facility/task category	Classification factor
A	3.0

B	2.5
C	2.0
D	1.25

(e) The contracting officer shall select the Facility/Task Category after considering the following:

(1) *Facility/Task Category A.* The main focus of effort performed is related to:

- (i) The manufacture, assembly, retrieval, disassembly, or disposal of nuclear weapons with explosive potential;
- (ii) The physical cleanup, processing, handling, or storage of nuclear radioactive or toxic chemicals with consideration given to the degree the nature of the work advances state of the art technologies in cleanup, processing or storage operations and/or the inherent difficulty or risk of the work is significantly demanding when compared to similar industrial/DOE settings (*i.e.*, nuclear energy processing, industrial environmental cleanup);
- (iii) Construction of facilities such as nuclear reactors, atomic particle accelerators, or complex laboratories or industrial units especially designed for handling radioactive materials;
- (iv) Research and development directly supporting paragraphs (e)(1)(i), (ii), or (iii) of this subsection and not conducted in a laboratory, or
- (v) As designated by the Procurement Executive, or designee. (Classification factor 3.0)

(2) *Facility/Task Category B.* The main focus of effort performed is related to:

- (i) The safeguarding and maintenance of nuclear weapons or nuclear material;
- (ii) The manufacture or assembly of nuclear components;
- (iii) The physical cleanup, processing, handling, or storage of nuclear radioactive or toxic chemicals, or other substances which pose a significant threat to the environment or the health and safety of workers or the public, if the nature of the work uses state of the art technologies or applications in such operations and/or the inherent difficulty or risk of the work is more demanding than that found in similar industrial/DOE settings (*i.e.*, nuclear energy, chemical or petroleum processing, industrial environmental cleanup);
- (iv) The detailed planning necessary for the assembly/disassembly of nuclear weapons/components;
- (v) Construction of facilities involving operations requiring a high degree of design layout or process control;
- (vi) Research and development directly supporting paragraphs (e)(2)(i), (ii), (iii), (iv) or

(v) of this subsection and not conducted in a laboratory; or

(vii) As designated by the Procurement Executive, or designee. (Classification factor 2.5)

(3) *Facility/Task Category C.* The main focus of effort performed is related to:

(i) The physical cleanup, processing, or storage of nuclear radioactive or toxic chemicals if the nature of the work uses routine technologies in cleanup, processing or storage operations and/or the inherent difficulty or risk of the work is similar to that found in similar industrial/DOE settings (*i.e.*, nuclear energy, chemical processing, industrial environmental cleanup);

(ii) Plant and facility maintenance;

(iii) Plant and facility security (other than the safeguarding of nuclear weapons and material);

(iv) Construction of facilities involving operations requiring normal processes and operations; general or administrative service buildings; or routine infrastructure requirements;

(v) Research and development directly supporting paragraphs (e)(3)(i), (ii), (iii) or (iv) of this subsection and not conducted in a laboratory; or

(vi) As designated by the Procurement Executive, or designee. (Classification factor 2.0)

(4) *Facility/Task Category D.* The main focus of the effort performed is research and development conducted at a laboratory. (Classification factor 1.25)

(f) Where the Procurement Executive, or designee, has approved a base fee, the Classification Factors shall be reduced, as approved by the Procurement Executive, or designee.

(g) Any risks which are indemnified by the Government (for example, by the Price-Anderson Act) will not be considered as risk to the contractor.

(h) All management and operating contracts awarded on a cost-plus-award-fee basis shall set forth in the contract, or the Performance Evaluation and Measurement Plan(s) required by the contract clause at [48 CFR 970.5215-1](#), Total Available Fee: Base Fee Amount and Performance Fee Amount, a site specific method of rating the contractor's performance of the contract requirements and a method of fee determination tied to the method of rating.

(i) Prior approval of the Procurement Executive, or designee, is required for an annual total available fee amount exceeding the guidelines in paragraph (c) of this subsection.

(j) DOE Operations/Field Office Managers must ensure that all important areas of contract performance are specified in the contract or Performance Evaluation and Measurement Plan(s), even if such areas are not assigned specific weights or percentages of available fee.

§970.1504-1-10 Special considerations: Fee limitations

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

In situations where the objective performance incentives are of unusual difficulty or where the successful completion of the performance incentives would provide extraordinary value to the Government, fees in excess of those allowed under [48 CFR 970.1504-1-5](#) and [48 CFR 970.1504-1-9](#) may be allowed with the approval of the Procurement Executive, or designee. Requests to allow fees in excess of those provided under other provisions of this fee policy must be accompanied by a written justification with detailed supporting rationale as to how the specific circumstances satisfy the two criteria listed in this subsection.

§970.1504-1-11 Documentation

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

The contracting officer shall tailor the documentation of the determination of fee prenegotiation objective based on [48 CFR 15.406-1](#), Prenegotiation objectives, and the determination of the negotiated fee in accordance with [48 CFR 15.406-3](#), Documenting the negotiation. The contracting officer shall include as part of the documentation: the rationale for the allocation of cost and the assignment of Facility/Task Categories; a discussion of the calculations described in [48 CFR 970.1504-1-5](#); and discussion of any other relevant provision of this subsection.

§970.1504-2 Price negotiation

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) Management and operating contract prices (fee) and DOE obligations to support contract performance shall be governed by:

- (1) The level of activity authorized and the amount of funds appropriated for DOE approved programs by specific program legislation;
- (2) Congressional budget and reporting limitations;
- (3) The amount of funds apportioned to DOE;
- (4) The amount of obligational authority allotted to program officials and Approved Funding Program limitations; and
- (5) The amount of funds actually available to the DOE operating activity as determined in accordance with applicable financial regulations and directives.

(b) Funds shall be obligated and made available by contract provision or modification after the funds become available for obligation for payment to support performance of DOE approved projects, tasks, work authorizations, or services.

(c) Contractor expenditures shall be limited to the overall amount of funds available and obligated on the contract. As prescribed at [48 CFR 970.3270\(b\)](#), the clause at [48 CFR 970.5232-4](#), Obligation of Funds, is used for this purpose.

§970.1504-3 Documentation

§970.1504-3-1 Cost or pricing data

(a) The certification requirements of [48 CFR 15.406-2](#) are not applied to DOE cost-reimbursement management and operating contracts.

(b) The contracting officer shall ensure that management and operating contractors and their subcontractors obtain cost or pricing data prior to the award of a negotiated subcontract or modification of a subcontract in accordance with [48 CFR 15.406-2](#), and incorporate appropriate contract provisions similar to those set forth at [48 CFR 52.215-10](#) and [48 CFR 52.215-11](#) that provide for the reduction of a negotiated subcontract price by any significant amount that the subcontract price was increased because of the submission of defective cost or pricing data by a subcontractor at any tier.

(c) The clauses at [48 CFR 52.215-12](#) and [48 CFR 52.215-13](#) shall be included in management and operating contracts.

§970.1504-4 Special cost or pricing areas

§970.1504-4-1--970.1504-4-3 [Reserved]

§970.1504-5 Solicitation provision and contract clauses

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) The contracting officer shall insert the clause at [48 CFR 970.5215-1](#), Total Available Fee: Base Fee Amount and Performance Fee Amount, in management and operating contracts, and other contracts determined by the Procurement Executive, or designee, that include cost-plus-award-fee arrangements.

(1) The contracting officer shall include the clause with its Alternate I when the award fee cycle consists of two or more evaluation periods.

(2) The contracting officer shall include the clause with its Alternate II when the award fee cycle consists of one evaluation period.

(3) The contracting officer shall include the clause with its Alternate III when the DOE Operations/Field Office Manager, or designee, requires the contractor to submit a self-assessment.

(4) The contracting officer shall include the clause with its Alternate IV when the DOE Operations/Field Office Manager, or designee, permits the contractor to submit a self-assessment at the contractor's option.

(b)

(1) The contracting officer shall insert the clause at [48 CFR 970.5215-3](#), Conditional Payment of Fee, Profit, and Other Incentives-Facility Management Contracts, in all DOE management and operating contracts and other contracts determined by the Procurement Executive, or designee.

(2) The contracting officer shall include the clause with its Alternate I in contracts that do not contain the clause at [48 CFR 952.204-2](#), Security.

(3) The contracting officer shall include the clause with its Alternate II in contracts that are awarded on a cost-plus-award-fee basis. The contracting officer should consider including the clause with its Alternate II in contracts that are awarded on a multiple fee basis if the cost-plus-award-fee portion of the contract is significant.

(c) The contracting officer shall insert the clause at [48 CFR 970.5215-4](#), Cost Reduction, in management and operating contracts, and other contracts determined by the Procurement Executive, or designee, if cost savings programs are contemplated.

(d) The Contracting officer shall insert the provision at [48 CFR 970.5215-5](#), Limitation on Fee, in solicitations for management and operating contracts, and other contracts determined by the Procurement Executive, or designee.

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [69 FR 68781](#), Dec. 10, 2003; [71 FR 16243](#), Mar. 31, 2006]

Subpart 970-17 - Special Contracting Methods

§970.1706 Management and operating contracts

§970.1706-1 Award, renewal, and extension

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) *Contract term.* Effective work performance under a management and operating contract is facilitated by the use of a relatively long contract term of up to ten (10) years. Accordingly, management and operating contracts shall provide for a basic contract term not to exceed five (5) years and may include an option(s) to extend the term for additional periods; provided, that no one option period exceeds five (5) years in duration and the total term of the contract, including any options exercised, does not exceed ten (10) years. The specific term of the base period and of any options periods shall be determined at the time of the authorization to compete or extend the contract. The term “option” as used in this subpart means a unilateral right in the contract by which the Government can extend the term of the contract. Accordingly, except as may be provided for through the inclusion of an option(s) in the contract to extend the term, any extension to continue the contract with the incumbent contractor beyond its term shall only occur when such extension can be justified under one of the statutory authorities identified in [48 CFR 6.302](#) and when authorized by the Head of the Agency.

(b) *Exercise of option.* As part of the review required by [48 CFR 17.605\(b\)](#), the contracting officer shall assess whether competing the contract will produce a more advantageous offer than exercising the option. The incumbent contractor's past performance under the contract, the extent to which performance-based management contract provisions are present, or can be negotiated into, the contract, and the impact of a change in a contractor on the Department's discharge of its programs are considerations that shall be addressed in the contracting officer's decision that the exercise of the option is in the Government's best interest. The contracting officer's decision shall be approved by the Procurement Executive and the cognizant Assistant Secretary(s).

(c) *Conditional Authorization of Non-competitive Extension Made Pursuant to Authority Under CICA.* Authorization to extend a management and operating contract by the Head of the Agency shall be considered conditional upon the successful negotiation of the contract to be extended in accordance with the Department's negotiation objectives. The Head of the Contracting Activity shall advise the Procurement Executive no later than 6 months after receipt of the conditional authorization as to whether the Department's objectives will be met and, if not, the contracting activity's plans for competing the requirement.

§970.1706-2 Contract clause

The contracting officer shall insert the clause at [48 CFR 52.217-9](#), Option to Extend the Term of the Contract, in all management and operating contracts when the inclusion of an option is appropriate.

§970.1707 Work for others

§970.1707-1 Scope

Pursuant to Section 33 of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended ([42 U.S.C. 2053](#)), DOE is authorized to make its facilities available to other Federal and non-Federal entities (sponsors) for the conduct of certain research and development and training activities. Pursuant to the Economy Act of 1932, as amended ([31 U.S.C. 1535](#)), or other applicable authority, other Federal entities may request DOE to conduct work. DOE has implemented these and other statutory authorities and requirements in its Work for Others Program. DOE's internal procedures governing the Work for Others Program are described in DOE Order 481.1C, WORK FOR OTHERS (NON-DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY FUNDED WORK).

[[69 FR 75003](#), Dec. 15, 2004]

§970.1707-2 Purpose

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

The purpose of DOE's Work for Others Program is to:

- (a) Provide access for non-DOE entities to highly specialized or unique DOE facilities, services, or technical expertise, when private facilities are inadequate;
- (b) Increase research and development interactions among DOE's management and operating contractors and industry in order to transfer DOE technologies to industry for further development or commercialization;
- (c) Maintain facility core competencies;
- (d) Enhance the science and technology capabilities at DOE facilities; and,
- (e) Provide assistance to other Federal agencies and non-Federal entities in accomplishing goals that may otherwise be unattainable and to avoid the possible duplication of effort at Federal facilities.

[[69 FR 75003](#), Dec. 15, 2004]

§970.1707-3 Terms governing work for others

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

- (a) DOE's internal review and approval procedural requirements for individual work for others agreements are set forth in DOE Order 481.1C (as supplemented by DOE Manual 481.1-1A for agreements with non-Federal entities), which may be amended from time to time, and such other guidance as may be issued by DOE. Contracting officers must ensure that the contractor's procedures for its operations are consistent with DOE's procedural requirements.

(b) A contractor may perform work for other Federal or non-Federal sponsors only if:

- (1) The contractor is authorized by contract clause to perform such work;
- (2) The work is not directly funded by DOE appropriations and is fully reimbursed by the sponsor;
- (3) The DOE Contracting Officer or authorized designee approves the work in advance; and,
- (4) The work is performed in accordance with DOE policies, procedures and directives applicable to the contract.

(c) Contracting officers must ensure that the requesting Federal entity certifies that:

- (1) The interagency agreement with DOE complies with the Economy Act of 1932 ([31 U.S.C. 1535](#)) and other applicable statutory authorities and [48 CFR 6.002](#), which prohibits the use of an Interagency Agreement for the purpose of avoiding the competition requirements of the Federal Acquisition Regulation; and,
- (2) The work to be performed will not place the DOE contractor in direct competition with the domestic private sector.

[[69 FR 75003](#), Dec. 15, 2004]

§970.1707-4 Contract clause

Insert the clause at 970.5217-1, Work for Others Program (Non-DOE Funded Work), in any contract that may involve work under the Work for Others Program, pursuant to 970.1707-3(b).

[[69 FR 75003](#), Dec. 15, 2004]

Subpart 970-19 - Small, Small Disadvantaged and Women-Owned Small Business Concerns

§970.1907 Subcontracting with Small Business, Small Disadvantaged Business and Woman-Owned Small Business Concerns

§970.1907-1 Subcontracting plan requirements

Pursuant to the clause at [48 CFR 52.219-9](#), Small Business Subcontracting Plan, which is required for all management and operating contracts, each management and operating contract shall include a subcontracting plan which is effective for the term of the contract. Goals for the contract shall be negotiated annually when revised funding levels are determined. The plan should include provisions for revising the goals or any other sections of the plan. Such revisions shall be in writing, approved by the contracting officer, and shall be specifically made a material part of the contract.

Subpart 970-22 - Application of Labor Policies

§970.2200 Scope of subpart

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

This subpart prescribes Department of Energy labor policies pertaining to the award and administration of management and operating contracts.

§970.2201 Basic labor policies

§970.2201-1 Labor relations

§970.2201-1-1 General

Contracting officers shall, in appropriate circumstances, follow the requirements in 48 CFR subpart 22.1, as supplemented in this section, in the award and administration of management and operating contracts.

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [74 FR 23126](#), May 18, 2009]

§970.2201-1-2 Policies

(a) The extent of Government ownership of the nation's energy plant and materials, and the overriding concerns of national defense and security, impose special conditions on personnel and labor relations in the energy program. Such special conditions include the need for continuity of vital operations at DOE installations; retention by DOE of absolute authority on all questions of security; and DOE

review of labor expenses under management and operating contracts as a part of its responsibility for assuring judicious expenditure of public funds. It is the intent of DOE that personnel and labor policies throughout the energy program reflect the best experience of American industry in aiming to achieve the type of stable labor-management relations that are essential to the proper development of the energy program. The following enunciates the principles upon which the DOE policy is based:

(1) *Employment standards.*

(i) Management and operating contractors are expected to bring experienced, proven personnel from their private operations to staff key positions on the contract and to recruit other well-qualified personnel as needed. Such personnel should be employed and treated during employment without discrimination by reason of race, color, religion, sex, age, disability, or national origin. Contractors shall be required to take affirmative action to achieve these objectives.

(ii) The Contractor must conduct a thorough review, as defined at [48 CFR 904.401](#), of an uncleared applicant's or uncleared employee's background, and test the individual for illegal drugs, as part of its determination to select that individual for a position requiring a DOE access authorization.

(A) A review must: Verify an uncleared applicant's or uncleared employee's educational background, including any high school diploma obtained within the past five years, and degrees or diplomas granted by an institution of higher learning; contact listed employers for the last three years and listed personal references; conduct local law enforcement checks when such checks are not prohibited by state or local law or regulation and when the uncleared applicant or uncleared employee resides in the jurisdiction where the contractor is located; and conduct a credit check and other checks as appropriate.

(B) Contractor reviews are not required for an applicant for DOE access authorization who possesses a current access authorization from DOE or another federal agency, or whose access authorization may be reapproved without a federal background investigation pursuant to Executive Order 12968, Access to Classified Information (August 4, 1995), Sections 3.3(c) and (d).

(C) In collecting and using this information to make a determination as to whether it is appropriate to select an uncleared applicant or uncleared employee for a position requiring an access authorization, the contractor must comply with all applicable laws, regulations, and Executive Orders, including those:

(1) Governing the processing and privacy of an individual's information by employers, such as the Fair Credit Reporting Act, Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), and Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act; and

(2) Prohibiting discrimination in employment, such as under the ADA, Title VII and the Age Discrimination in Employment Act, including with respect to pre- and post-offer of employment disability related questioning.

(iii) In addition to a review, each candidate for a DOE access authorization must be tested to demonstrate the absence of any illegal drug, as defined in [10 CFR Part 707.4](#). All

positions requiring access authorizations are deemed *testing designated positions* in accordance with [10 CFR Part 707](#). All employees possessing access authorizations are subject to applicant, random or for cause testing for use of illegal drugs. DOE will not process candidates for a DOE access authorization unless their tests confirm the absence of any illegal drug.

(iv) When an uncleared applicant or uncleared employee is hired specifically for a position that requires a DOE access authorization, the contractor shall not place that individual in that position prior to the access authorization being granted by DOE, unless an approval has been obtained from the contracting officer, acting in consultation for these purposes with the head of the cognizant local security office. If an uncleared employee is placed in that position prior to an access authorization being granted by the contracting officer, the uncleared employee may not be afforded access to classified information or matter or special nuclear material (in categories requiring access authorization) until the contracting officer notifies the employer that an access authorization has been granted.

(v)(A) The contractor must furnish to the head of the cognizant local DOE Security Office, in writing, the following information concerning each uncleared applicant or uncleared employee who is selected for a position requiring an access authorization:

- (1) The date(s) each review was conducted;
- (2) Each entity contacted that provided information concerning the individual;
- (3) A certification that the review was conducted in accordance with all applicable laws, regulations, and Executive Orders, including those governing the processing and privacy of an individual's information collected during the review;
- (4) A certification that all information collected during the review was reviewed and evaluated in accordance with the contractor's personnel policies; and
- (5) The results of the test for illegal drugs.

When a DOE access authorization will be required, the aforementioned review must be conducted and the required information forwarded to DOE before a request is made to DOE to process the individual for an access authorization.

(vi) Management and operating contractors and other contractors operating DOE facilities shall include the requirements set forth in this subsection in subcontracts (appropriately modified to identify the parties) wherein subcontract employees will be required to hold DOE access authorizations in order to perform on-site duties, such as protective force operations.

(2) *Security*. On all matters of security at its facilities, DOE retains absolute authority and neither the regulations and policies pertaining to security, nor their administration, are matters for collective bargaining between the contractor's management and labor. Insofar as DOE security regulations affect the collective bargaining process, the security policies and regulations will be made known to both parties. To the fullest extent feasible, DOE will consult with representatives of the contractor's management and labor when formulating security regulations and policies that may affect the collective bargaining process.

(3) *Wages, salaries, and employee benefits.*

(i) Wages, salaries, and employee benefits shall be administered in a manner designated to adapt the normal practices and conditions of industry or institutions of higher education to the contract work, and to provide for appropriate review by DOE. Area practices, valid patterns, and well-established commercial or academic practices of the contractors, as appropriate, form the criteria for the establishment and adjustment of compensation schedules.

(ii) The aspects of wages, hours, and working conditions which are the substance of collective bargaining in normal organized industries will be left to the orderly processes of negotiation and agreement between DOE contractor management and employee representatives with maximum possible freedom from Government interference.

(4) *Employee relations.* The handling of employee relations on contract work, including such matters as the conduct and discipline of the work force and the handling of employee grievances, is part of the normal management responsibility of the contractor.

(5) *Collective bargaining.*

(i) DOE review of collective bargaining practices will be premised on the view that management's trusteeship for the operation of the Government facilities includes the duty to adopt practices which are fundamental to the friendly adjustment of disputes, and which experience has shown, promote orderly collective bargaining relationships. Practices inconsistent with this view may be objected to if not found to be otherwise clearly warranted.

(ii) Consistent with the policy of assuring continuity of operation of vital facilities, all collective bargaining agreements at DOE-owned facilities should provide that grievances and disputes involving the interpretation or application of the agreement will be settled without resorting to strike, lockout, or other interruption of normal operations. For this purpose, each collective bargaining agreement entered into during the period of performance of this contract should provide an effective grievance procedure with arbitration as its final step, unless the parties mutually agree upon some other method of assuring continuity of operation for the term of the collective bargaining agreement.

(iii) DOE expects its management and operating contractors and the unions representing the contractor's employees to cooperate fully with the Federal Mediation and Conciliation Service.

(6) *Personnel training.* DOE encourages and supports personnel training programs aimed at improving work efficiency or developing needed skills which are not otherwise obtainable.

(7) *Working conditions.* Accident, fire, health, and occupational hazards associated with DOE activities will be held to a practical minimum level and controlled in the interest of maintenance of health and prevention of accidents. Subject to DOE control, contractors shall be required to maintain comprehensive continuous preventive and protective programs appropriate to the particular activities throughout all operations. Appropriate financial protection in case of occupational disability must be provided to employees on DOE projects.

(b) Title to payroll and associated records under certain contracts for the management and operation of DOE facilities, and for necessary miscellaneous construction incidental to the function of these facilities, shall vest in the Government. Such records are to be disposed of in accordance with DOE directions. For such contracts, the Solicitor of Labor has granted a tolerance from the Department of Labor Regulations to omit from the prescribed labor clauses the requirement for the retention of payrolls and associated records for a period of three years after completion of the contract. Under this tolerance, the records retention requirements for all labor clauses in the contract and the Fair Labor Standards Act are satisfied by disposal of such records in accordance with applicable DOE directives.

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [74 FR 23126](#), May 18, 2009]

§970.2201-1-3 Contract clause

In addition to the clause at [48 CFR 52.222-1](#), Notice to the Government of Labor Disputes, the contracting officer shall insert the clause at 970.5222-1, Collective Bargaining Agreements-Management and Operating Contracts, in all management and operating contracts.

§970.2201-2 Overtime management

§970.2201-2-1 Policy

Contracting officers shall ensure that management and operating contractors manage overtime cost effectively and use overtime only when necessary to ensure performance of work under the contract.

§970.2201-2-2 Contract clause

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

The contracting officer shall insert the clause at [48 CFR 970.5222-2](#), Overtime Management, in management and operating contracts.

§970.2204 Labor standards for contracts involving construction

§970.2204-1 Statutory and regulatory requirements

§970.2204-1-1 Administrative controls and criteria for application of the Davis-Bacon Act in operational or maintenance activities

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) Particular work items falling within one or more of the following criteria normally will be classified as noncovered by the Davis-Bacon Act, hereinafter referred to in this section as the “Act.”

- (1) Individual work items estimated to cost \$2,000 or less. The total dollar amount of the management and operating contract is not a factor to be considered and bears no relation to individual work items classified as construction, alteration and/or repair, including painting and decorating. However, no item of work, the cost of which is estimated to be in excess of \$2,000, shall be artificially divided into portions less than \$2,000 for the purpose of avoiding the application of the Act.
- (2) Work and services that are a part of operational and maintenance activities or which, being very closely and directly involved therewith, are more in the nature of operational activities than construction, alteration, and/or repair work. This includes work and services which would involve a material risk to continuity of operations, to life or property, or to DOE operating requirements, if performed by persons other than the contractor's regular production and maintenance forces. However, any decision that contracts or work items are noncovered for these reasons must be made by the Head of the Contracting Activity without power of delegation.
- (3) Assembly, modification, setup, installation, replacement, removal, rearrangement, connection, testing, adjustment, and calibration of machinery and equipment. However, it is noted that these activities are covered if they are part of, or would be a logical part of, the construction of a facility, or if construction-type work which is not “incidental” to the overall effort is involved.
- (4) Experimental development of equipment, processes, or devices, including assembly, fitting, installation, testing, reworking, and disassembly. This refers to equipment, processes, and devices which are assembled for the purpose of conducting a test or experiment. The design may be only conceptual in character, and professional personnel who are responsible for the experiment participate in the assembly. Specifically excluded from the category of experimental development are buildings and building utility services, as distinguished from temporary connections thereto. Also specifically excluded from this category is equipment to be used for continuous testing (*e.g.*, a machine to be continuously used for testing the tensile strength of structural members).
- (5) Experimental work in connection with peaceful uses of nuclear energy. This refers to equipment, processes and devices which are assembled and/or set in place and interconnected for the purpose of conducting a test or experiment. The nature of the test or experiment is such that professional personnel who are responsible for the test or experiment and/or data to be derived therefrom must, by necessity, participate in the assembly and interconnections. Specifically excluded from experimental work are buildings, building utility services, structural changes, drilling, tunneling, excavation, and back-filling work which can be performed according to customary drawings and specifications, and utility services of modifications to utility services, as distinguished from temporary connections thereto. Work in this category may be performed in mines or in other locations specifically constructed for tests or experiments.

(6) Emergency work to combat the effects of fire, flood, earthquake, equipment failure, accident, or other casualties, and to restart the operational activity following the casualty. Work which is not directly related to restarting the activity or which involves rebuilding or replacement of a structure, structural components, or equipment is excluded from this category.

(7) Decontamination, including washing, scrubbing, and scraping to remove contamination; removal of contaminated soil or other material; and painting or other resurfacing, provided that such painting or resurfacing is an integral part of the decontamination activity and performed by the employees of the contractors performing the decontamination.

(8) Burial of contaminated soil waste or contained liquid; however, initial preparatory work readying the burial ground for use (*e.g.*, any grading or excavating that is a part of initial site preparation, fencing, drilling wells for continued monitoring of contamination, construction of guard or other office space) is covered. Work performed subsequent to burial which involves the placement of concrete or other like activity is also covered.

(b) The classification of a contract as a contract for operational or maintenance activities does not necessarily mean that all work and activities at the contract location are classifiable as outside coverage of the Act since it may be necessary to separate work which should be classified as covered. Therefore, the Heads of Contracting Activities shall establish and maintain controls for the careful scrutiny of proposed work assignments under such contracts to assure that:

(1) Contractors whose contracts do not contemplate the performance of work covered by the Act with the contractor's own forces are neither asked nor authorized to perform work within the scope of the Act. If the actual work assignments do involve covered work, the contract should be modified to include applicable provisions of the Act.

(2) Where covered work is performed by a contractor whose contract contains provisions required by the Act, such work is performed as required by law and the contract. After the contractor has been informed, as provided in paragraph (b)(3) of this subsection, that certain work is covered, the responsibilities of the Head of the Contracting Activity to assure compliance is the same as it would be if the work were being performed under a separate construction contract.

(3) Controls provided for above include consideration by the Head of the Contracting Activity and the contractor, before work is begun or contracted out, of the relation of the Act to the annual programming of work; the contractor's work orders; and work contracted out in excess of \$2,000. The Head of the Contracting Activity may, if consistent with DOE's responsibilities as described in this subsection, prescribe from time to time classes of work as to which applicability or nonapplicability of the Act is clear, for which the Head of the Contracting Activity will require no further DOE determination on coverage in advance of the work. For all work, controls to be established by the Head of the Contracting Activity should provide for notification to the contractor before work is begun as to whether such work is covered. The Head of the Contracting Activity is responsible for submitting to the Wage and Hours Division, Employment Standards Administration, Department of Labor, Washington, D.C. 20210, all DOE requests for project area or installation wage determinations, or individual determinations, or extensions or modification thereto. Requests for such determinations shall be made on Standard Form 308, at least 30 calendar days before they are required for use in advertising for bids or requests for proposals.

(c) *Experimental installations.* Within DOE programs, a variety of experiments are conducted involving materials, fuels, coolants, and processing equipment. Certain types of situations where tests and experiments have presented coverage questions are described as follows:

(1) *Set-ups of device and/or processes.* The proving out of investigative findings and theories of a scientific and technical nature may require the set-up of various devices and/or processes at an early, pre-prototype stage of development. These may range from laboratory bench size to much larger set-ups. As a rule, these set-ups are made within established facilities (normally laboratories), required utility connections are made to services provided as a part of the basic facilities, and the activity as a whole falls within the functional purpose of the facility. Such set-ups are generally not covered. However, the erection of structures which are public works is covered if construction type work, other than incidental work, is involved. Preparatory work for the set-up requiring structural changes or modifications of basic utility services, as distinguished from connections thereto, is covered. The following are illustrations of noncovered set-ups of devices and/or processes:

- (i) Assembly of piping and equipment within existing “hot cell” facilities for proving out a conceptual design of a chemical processing unit;
- (ii) Assembly of equipment, including adaptation and modification thereof, in existing “hot cell” facilities to prove out a conceptual design for remotely controlled machining equipment;
- (iii) Assembly of the first graphite pile in a stadium at Stagg Field in Chicago;
- (iv) Assembly of materials and equipment for particular aspects of the direct current thermonuclear experiments to explore feasibility and to study other ramifications of the concept of high energy injection and to collect data thereon.

(2) *Loops.* Many experiments are carried on in equipment assemblies, called loops, in which liquids or gases are circulated under monitored and controlled conditions. For purposes of determining coverage under the Act, loops may be classed as loop facilities or as loop set-ups. Both of these classes of loops can include in-reactor loops and out-of-reactor loops. In differentiating between clearly identified loop set-ups and loop facilities, an area exists in which there have been some questions of coverage, such as certain loops at the Material Test Reactor and at Engineering Test Reactor and the Idaho National Engineering and Environmental Laboratory site. Upon clarification of this area, further illustrations will be added. In the meantime, the differentiation between loop set-ups and loop facilities must be made on a case-by-case basis, taking into account the total criteria set forth in this subpart.

- (i) *Loop set-ups.* The assembly, erection, modification, and disassembly of a loop set-up is noncovered. A noncontroversial example of a loop set-up is one which is assembled in a laboratory, *e.g.*, Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Argonne National Laboratory, or Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory, for a particular test and thereafter disassembled. However, preparatory work for a loop set-up requiring structural changes or modifications of basic utility services as distinguished from connections thereto is covered, as are material and equipment that are installed for a loop set-up which is a permanent part of the facility or which is use for a succession of experimental programs.
- (ii) *Loop facilities.* A loop facility differs from a loop set-up in that it is of a more

permanent character. It is usually, but not always, of greater size. It normally involves the building or modification of a structure. Sometimes it is installed as a part of construction of the facility. It may be designed for use in a succession of experimental programs over a longer period of time. Examples of loop facilities are the in-reactor "K" loops at Hanford and the large Aircraft Nuclear Propulsion loop at the Idaho National Engineering and Environmental Laboratory site. The on-site assembly and erection of such loop facilities are covered. However, once a loop facility is completed and becomes operational, the criteria set forth in this paragraph for operational and maintenance activities apply.

(3) *Reactor component experiments.* Other experiments are carried on by insertion of experimental components within reactor systems without the use of a loop assembly. An example of reactor facilities erected for such experimental purposes are the special power excursion test reactors (SPETRs) at the National Reactor Test Site which are designed for studying reactor behavior and performance characteristics of certain reactor components. Such a facility may consist of a reactor vessel, pressurizing tank, coolant loops, pumps, heat exchangers, and other auxiliary equipment as needed. The facility also may include sufficient shielding to permit work on the reactor to proceed following a short period of power interruption, and buildings as needed to house the reactor and its auxiliary equipment. The erection and on-site assembly of such a reactor facility is covered, but the components whose characteristics are under study are excluded from coverage. To illustrate, one of the SPETRs planned for studies of nuclear reactor safety is designed to accommodate various internal fuel and control assemblies. The internal structure of the pressure vessel is designed so that cores of different shapes and sizes may be placed in the vessel for investigation, or the entire internal structure may be easily removed and replaced by a structure which will accept a different core design. Similarly, the control rod assembly is arranged to provide for flexibility in the removal of instrument leads and experimental assemblies from within the core.

(4) *Tests or experiments in peaceful uses of nuclear energy.* These tests or experiments are varied in nature and some are only in a planning stage. They consist of one or more nuclear or nonnuclear detonations for the purposes of acquiring data. The data can include seismic effects, radiation effects, amount of heat generated, amount of material moved and so forth. Some of these tests are conducted in existing mines, while others are conducted in facilities specifically constructed for the tests or experiments. In general, all work which can be performed in accordance with customary drawings and specifications, as well as other work in connection with preparation of facilities is treated as covered work. Such work includes tunneling, drilling, excavation and back-filling, erection of buildings or other structures, and installation of utilities. The installation of the nonnuclear material or nuclear device to be detonated, and the instrumentation and connection between such material or device and the instrumentation are treated as noncovered work.

(5) *Tests or experiments in military uses of nuclear energy.* As in 970.2204-1-1(c)(4), these tests or experiments can be varied in nature. However, under this category it is intended to include only detonation of nonnuclear material or nuclear devices. The material or devices can be detonated either underground, at ground level, or above the ground. These tests or experiments have been conducted in, on, or in connection with facilities specifically constructed for such tests or experiments. As in tests or experiments in peaceful uses of nuclear energy, all work which can be performed in accord with customary drawings and specifications, as well as other work in connection with preparation of facilities are treated as covered work. Such work includes building towers or similar structures, tunneling, drilling, excavation and backfilling, erection of buildings or other structures, and installation of utilities. The installation of the

nonnuclear material or nuclear devices and instrumentation are treated as noncovered work.

(d) *Construction site contiguous to an established manufacturing facility.* As DOE-owned property sometimes encompasses several thousand acres of real estate, a number of separate facilities may be located in areas contiguous to each other on the same property. These facilities may be built over a period of years, and established manufacturing activities may be regularly carried on at one site at the same time that construction of another facility is underway at another site. On occasion, the regular manufacturing activities of the operating contractor at the first site may include the manufacture, assembly, and reconditioning of components and equipment which in other industries would normally be done in established commercial plants. While the manufacture of components and equipment in the manufacturing plant is noncovered, the installation of any such manufactured items on a construction job is covered.

§970.2208 Equal employment opportunity

The equal employment opportunity provisions of 48 CFR subpart 22.8 and subpart 922.8 of this chapter, including Executive Order 11246 and [41 CFR part 60](#), are applicable to DOE management and operating contracts.

§970.2210 Service Contract Act

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

The Service Contract Act of 1965 is not applicable to contracts for the management and operation of DOE facilities, but it is applicable to subcontracts under such contracts (see [48 CFR 970.5244-1](#)).

§970.2270 Unemployment compensation

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) Each state has its own unemployment compensation system to provide payments to workers who become unemployed involuntarily and through no fault of their own. Funds are provided for unemployment compensation benefits through a payroll tax on employers. Most DOE contractors are subject to the unemployment compensation tax laws of the states in which they are located. It is the policy to assure, both in the negotiation and administration of cost-reimbursement type contracts, that economical and practical arrangements are made and practiced with respect to unemployment compensation.

(b) *Contract exempt from state laws.*

(1) Some contractors are exempt from state unemployment compensation laws, usually on grounds that they are nonprofit organizations or subdivisions of State governments. Most states, however, permit such employers to elect unemployment compensation coverage on a voluntary

basis. Under such circumstances, all existing or prospective cost-reimbursement contractors shall be encouraged to provide unemployment compensation coverage or equivalent substitutes.

(2) It is also DOE policy that, prior to the award or extension of a management and operating contract, exempt contractors or prospective contractors shall be required to submit to the contracting officer a statement that they will either elect coverage or provide equivalent substitutes for unemployment compensation, or in the alternative, submit evidence that it is impractical to do so. If any exempt contractor or prospective contractor submits that it is impractical to elect coverage or to provide an equivalent substitute, appropriate Office of Contract and Resource Management, within the Headquarters procurement organization, staff shall review that position prior to recommending an award or extension of the contract. If there are substantial reasons for not electing coverage or for not providing equivalent substitutes, a contract may be awarded or extended. Headquarters' staff review and recommendation shall be based on such factors as:

- (i) The specific provisions of the unemployment compensation law of the State;
- (ii) The extent to which the establishment of special conditions on DOE work may have an adverse effect on the contractor's general policies and operating costs in its private operations;
- (iii) The numerical relationship between the contractor's private work force and its employees performing only work for DOE;
- (iv) The contractor's record with respect to work force stability and the general outlook with respect to future work force stability;
- (v) In a replacement contractor situation, whether or not the prior contractor had coverage or suitable substitutes; and
- (vi) The particular labor relations implications involved.

Subpart 970-23 - Environment, Conservation, Occupational Safety, and Drug Free Work Place

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

§970.2303 Hazardous materials identification and material safety

§970.2303-1 General

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) The Department of Energy regulates the nuclear safety of its major facilities under its own statutory authority derived from the Atomic Energy Act and other legislation. The Department also regulates, under certain specific conditions, the use by its contractors of radioactive materials and ionizing radiation producing machines.

(b) The inclusion of environmental, safety and health clauses in DOE contracts shall be made by the contracting officer in accordance with this subpart and in consultation with appropriate environmental, safety and health program management personnel.

(c)

(1) For DOE management and operating contracts and other contracts designated by the Procurement Executive, or designee, the clause entitled “Conditional Payment of Fee, Profit, and Other Incentives-Facility Management Contracts” implements the requirements of section 234C of the Atomic Energy Act for the use of a contract clause that provides for an appropriate reduction in the fee or amount paid to the contractor under the contract in the event of a violation by the contractor or any contractor employee of any Departmental regulation relating to the enforcement of worker safety and health concerns. The clause, in part, provides for reductions in the amount of fee, profit, or share of cost savings that is otherwise earned by the contractor for performance failures relating to worker safety and health violations under the Department's regulations.

(2)

(i) Section 234C of the Atomic Energy Act states that DOE shall either pursue civil penalties (implemented at [10 CFR part 851](#)) for a violation under section 234C of the Atomic Energy Act ([42 U.S.C. 2282c](#)) or a contract fee reduction, but not both.

(ii) The contracting officer must coordinate with the Office of Price Anderson Enforcement within the Office of the Assistant Secretary for Environment, Safety and Health (or with any designated successor office) before pursuing contract fee reduction in the event of a violation by the contractor or any contractor employee of any Departmental regulation relating to the enforcement of worker safety and health concerns.

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [68 FR 68782](#), Dec. 10, 2003]

§970.2303-2 Contract clauses

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) When work under management and operating contracts and subcontracts thereunder is to be performed at a facility where DOE will exercise its statutory authority to enforce occupational safety and health standards applicable to the working conditions of the contractor and subcontractor employees at such facility, the clause at [48 CFR 970.5223-1](#), Integration of Environment, Safety and Health into Work Planning and Execution, shall be used in such contract or subcontract and made applicable to the work if conditions in paragraphs (a)(1) through (3) of this section, are satisfied:

- (1) DOE work is segregated from the contractor's or subcontractor's other work;
- (2) The operation is of sufficient size to support its own safety and health services; and
- (3) The facility is government-owned, or leased by or for the account of the government.

(b) The clause set forth in [952.223-72](#), Radiation Protection and Nuclear Criticality, shall be included in those contracts or subcontracts for, and be made applicable to, work to be performed at a facility where DOE does not elect to assert its statutory authority to enforce occupational safety and health standards applicable to the working conditions of contractor and subcontractor employees, but does need to enforce radiological safety and health standards pursuant to provisions of the contract or subcontract rather than by reliance upon Nuclear Regulatory Commission licensing requirements (including agreements with States under section 274 of the Atomic Energy Act).

§970.2304 Use of recovered/recycled materials

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

§970.2304-1 General

The policy for the acquisition and use of EPA designated items, *i.e.*, items with recovered/recycled content, is set forth at 48 CFR (FAR) 23.4-Use of Recovered Materials as supplemented by 48 CFR (DEAR) 923.405(e) and by 48 CFR (FAR) 23.704, Application to Government-owned or leased facilities, and 48 CFR (FAR) 23.705, Contract clause.

[[68 FR 6359](#), Feb. 7, 2003]

§970.2304-2 Contract clause

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

The contracting officer shall insert the clause at 48 CFR (FAR) 52.223-10, Waste Reduction Program, and the clause at 48 CFR (DEAR) 970.5223-2, Affirmative Procurement Program, in contracts for the management of DOE facilities, including national laboratories. If the contractor subcontracts a significant portion of the operation of the Government facility which includes the acquisition of items designated in EPA's Comprehensive Procurement Guidelines, the subcontract shall contain a clause

substantially the same as that at 48 CFR (DEAR) 970.5223-2. The EPA Comprehensive Procurement Guidelines identify products which Federal agencies and their contractors are to procure with recycled content pursuant to [40 CFR part 247](#). Examples of such subcontracts would be operation of the facility supply function, construction or remodeling at the facility, or maintenance of the facility motor vehicle fleet. In situations in which the facility management contractor can reasonably determine the amount of products with recovered/recycled content to be acquired under the subcontract, the facility management contractor is not required to flow down the reporting requirement of the 970.5223-2 clause. Instead, the facility management contractor may include the subcontract quantities in its own report and include an agreement in the subcontract that such products will be acquired with recovered/recycled content and that the subcontractor will advise if it is unable to procure such products with recovered/recycled content because the product is not available:

- (a) Competitively within a reasonable time;
- (b) At a reasonable price; or,
- (c) Within the performance requirements.

[[68 FR 6359](#), Feb. 7, 2003]

§970.2305 Workplace substance abuse programs-management and operating contracts

§970.2305-1 General

(a) The Department of Energy (DOE), as part of its overall responsibilities to protect the environment, maintain public health and safety, and safeguard the national security, has established policies, criteria, and procedures for management and operating contractors to develop and implement programs that help maintain a workplace free from the use of illegal drugs.

(b) Regulations concerning DOE's management and operating contractor workplace substance abuse programs are promulgated at [10 CFR part 707](#), Workplace Substance Abuse Programs at DOE Sites.

§970.2305-2 Applicability

(a) All management and operating contracts awarded under the authority of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, are required to implement the policies, criteria, and procedures of [10 CFR part 707](#), Workplace Substance Abuse Programs at DOE Sites.

(b) Except as otherwise provided for in this subpart, management and operating contracts subject to the requirements of [10 CFR part 707](#) and this subpart shall not be subject to [48 CFR 23.5](#), Drug Free Workplace.

§970.2305-3 Definitions

Terms and words relating to DOE's Workplace Substance Abuse Programs, as used in this section, have the same meanings assigned to such terms and words in [10 CFR part 707](#).

§970.2305-4 Solicitation provision and contract clause

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) The contracting officer shall insert the provision at [48 CFR 970.5223-3](#), Agreement Regarding Workplace Substance Abuse Programs at DOE Sites, in solicitations for the management and operation of DOE-owned or -controlled sites operated under the authority of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended.

(b) The contracting officer shall insert the clause at [970.5223-4](#), Workplace Substance Abuse Programs at DOE Sites, in contracts for the management and operation of DOE-owned or -controlled sites operated under the authority of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended.

§970.2306 Suspension of payments, termination of contract, and debarment and suspension actions

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) The contracting officer shall comply with the procedures of [48 CFR 23.506](#) regarding the suspension of contract payments, the termination of the contract for default, and the debarment and suspension of a contractor relative to failure to comply with the clause at [48 CFR 970.5223-4](#), Workplace Substance Abuse Programs at DOE Sites.

(b) For purposes of [10 CFR part 707](#), the specific causes for suspension of contract payments, termination of the contract for default, and debarment and suspension of the contractor are:

- (1) The contractor fails to either comply with the requirements of [10 CFR part 707](#) or perform in a manner consistent with its approved program;
- (2) The contractor has failed to comply with the terms of the provision at [48 CFR 970.5223-3](#), Agreement Regarding Workplace Substance Abuse Programs at DOE Sites;
- (3) Such a number of contractor employees having been convicted of violations of criminal drug statutes for violations occurring on the DOE-owned or -controlled site, as to indicate that the contractor has failed to make a good faith effort to provide a drug free workplace; or,
- (4) The offeror has submitted a false certification in response to the provision at [48 CFR 970.5223-3](#), Agreement Regarding Workplace Substance Abuse Programs at DOE Sites.

§970.2307 Contracting for Environmentally Preferable and Energy-Efficient Products and Services

§970.2307-1 Motor vehicle fleet operations

Executive Order 13149 provides that the Federal motor vehicle fleet will serve as an example and provide a leadership role in the reduction of petroleum consumption through improvements in fleet fuel efficiency and the use of alternative fuel vehicles and alternative fuels. Part 2 of the Order establishes goals for Federal Government fleet efficiency and requires the development of strategies to accomplish the goals. Section 403 of the Order provides that environmentally preferable motor vehicle products, including biobased motor vehicle products, will be used in the maintenance of Federal fleet motor vehicles when these products are reasonably available and meet vehicle manufacturers' recommended performance standards. Environmentally preferable motor vehicle products are among the products contained in the Comprehensive Procurement Guidelines list of products with recycled content to be procured pursuant to the clause at [48 CFR 970.5223-2](#). Section 505 of Executive Order 13149 requires that the goals and requirements of the Order be included in all management contracts which include Federal motor vehicle fleet operations. Section 506 of Executive Order 13149 exempts military tactical, law enforcement, and emergency vehicles from the requirements of the order.

[[68 FR 52131](#), Sept. 2, 2003]

§970.2307-2 Contract clause

Include the clause at 970.5223-5, DOE Motor Vehicle Fleet Fuel Efficiency, in all management contracts providing for Contractor management of the motor vehicle fleet.

[[68 FR 52131](#), Sept. 2, 2003]

Subpart 970-26 - Other Socioeconomic Programs

§970.2670 Implementation of Section 3021 of the Energy Policy Act of 1992

§970.2670-1 Requirements

The goal requirements of section 3021 of the Energy Policy Act of 1992, and the attendant reporting requirements shall be included in the subcontracting plan for the management and operating contract and shall apply to the annual dollar obligations specifically provided to the contractor for competitively awarded subcontracts that fulfill Energy Policy Act requirements.

§970.2671 Diversity

§970.2671-1 Policy

Department of Energy policy recognizes that full utilization of the talents and capabilities of a diverse work force is critical to the achievement of its mission. The principal goals of this policy are to foster and enhance partnerships with small, small disadvantaged, women-owned small businesses, and educational institutions; to match capabilities with existing opportunities; to track small, small disadvantaged, women-owned small business, and educational activity; and to develop innovative strategies to increase opportunities.

§970.2671-2 Contract clause

The contracting officer shall insert the clause at [48 CFR 970.5226-1](#), Diversity Plan, in all management and operating contracts.

§970.2672 Implementation of Section 3161 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993

§970.2672-1 Policy

Consistent with the objectives of section 3161 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993, [42 U.S.C. 7274h](#), in instances where the Department of Energy has determined that a change in work force at a DOE Defense Nuclear Facility is necessary, DOE contractors and subcontractors at DOE Defense Nuclear Facilities shall accomplish work force restructuring or displacement so as to mitigate social and economic impacts and in a manner consistent with any DOE work force restructuring plan in effect for the facility or site. In all cases, mitigation shall include the requirement for hiring preferences for employees whose positions have been terminated (except for termination for cause) as a result of changes to the work force at the facility due to restructuring accomplished under the requirements of section 3161. Where applicable, contractors may take additional actions to mitigate consistent with the Department's Workforce Restructuring Plan for the facility or site.

§970.2672-2 Requirements

The requirements set forth in [48 CFR 926.71](#), Implementation of Section 3161 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993, for contractors and subcontractors to provide a hiring preference for employees under Department of Energy contracts whose employment in positions at a Department of Energy Defense Nuclear Facility is terminated (except for a termination for cause) applies to management and operating contracts.

§970.2672-3 Contract clause

The contracting officer shall insert the clause at [48 CFR 970.5226-2](#), Workforce Restructuring Under Section 3161 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993, in contracts for the management and operation of Department of Energy Defense Nuclear Facilities and, as appropriate, in other contracts that include site management responsibilities at a Department of Energy Defense Nuclear Facility.

§970.2673 Regional partnerships

§970.2673-1 Policy

It is the policy of the DOE to be a constructive partner in the geographic region in which DOE conducts its business. The basic elements of this policy include:

- (a) Recognizing the diverse interests of the region and its stakeholders,
- (b) Engaging regional stakeholders in issues and concerns of mutual interest, and
- (c) Recognizing that giving back to the community is a worthwhile business practice.

§970.2673-2 Contract clause

The contracting officer shall insert the clause at [48 CFR 970.5226-3](#), Community Commitment, in all management and operating contracts.

§970.2701 General

§970.2701-1 Applicability

This subpart applies to negotiation of patent rights, rights in technical data provisions and other related provisions for the Department of Energy contracts for the management and operation of DOE's major sites or facilities, including the conduct of research and development and nuclear weapons production, and contracts which involve major, long-term or continuing activities conducted at a DOE site.

§970.2702 Patent related clauses

§970.2702-1 Authorization and consent

Contracting officers must use the clause at 970.5227-4, Authorization and Consent, instead of the clause at [48 CFR 52.227-1](#).

§970.2702-2 Notice and assistance regarding patent and copyright infringement

Contracting officers must use the clause at 970.5227-5, Notice and Assistance Regarding Patent and Copyright Infringement, instead of the clause at [48 CFR 52.227-2](#).

§970.2702-3 Patent indemnity

(a) Contracting officers must use the clause at 970.5227-6, Patent Indemnity-Subcontracts to assure that subcontracts appropriately address patent indemnity.

(b) Normally, the clause at [48 CFR 52.227-3](#) would not be appropriate for an M&O contract; however, if there is a question, such as when the mission of the contractor involves production, the contracting officer must consult with local patent counsel and use the clause where appropriate.

§970.2702-4 Royalties

Contracting officers must use the solicitation provision at 970.5227-7, Royalty Information, and the clause at 970.5227-8, Refund of Royalties instead of the provision at [48 CFR 52.227-8](#) and the clause

at [48 CFR 52.227-9](#), respectively.

§970.2702-5 Rights to proposal data

Contracting officers must include the clause at [48 CFR 52.227-23](#), Rights to Proposal Data, in all solicitations and contracts for the management and operation of DOE sites and facilities.

§970.2702-6 Notice of right to request patent waiver

Contracting officers must include the provision at [970.5227-9](#) in all solicitations for contracts for the management and operation of DOE sites or facilities.

§970.2703 Patent rights

§970.2703-1 Purposes of patent rights clauses

(a) DOE sites and facilities are managed and operated on behalf of the Department of Energy by a contractor, pursuant to management and operating contracts that are generally awarded for a five (5) year term, with the possibility for renewal. Special provisions relating to patent rights are appropriately incorporated into an M&O contract because of the unique circumstances and responsibilities of managing and operating a Government-owned facility, as compared to other federally funded research and development contracts.

(b)

(1) *Technology transfer mission clause.* In accordance with Public Law 101-189, section 3133 (d), DOE may grant technology transfer authority to M&O contractors operating a DOE facility. Generally, M&O contractors have the right to elect to retain title to inventions made under the contract, whether a nonprofit or educational organizations, as a result of [35 U.S.C. 200 et seq.](#) (Bayh-Dole Act), or a large business, as a result of a class patent waiver issued pursuant to [10 CFR part 784](#). Under such contracts, the M&O contractor assumes responsibilities for commercializing retained inventions, in accordance with the Technology Transfer Mission clause provided at [970.5227-3](#). That clause also governs such activities as the distribution of royalties earned from inventions made under the contract and the transfer of patent rights in inventions made under the contract to successor contractors.

(2) If the M&O contractor is a nonprofit organization or small business firm having technology transfer authority, the following clauses are inserted into the M&O contract: [970.5227-3](#) and [970.5227-10](#).

(3) If the M&O contract has technology transfer as a mission and is to be performed by a for-

profit, large business firm that has been granted an advance class waiver, the following clauses are inserted into the M&O contract: 970.5227-3 and 970.5227-12. The terms of the clause at 970.5227-12 are subject to modification to conform to the terms of the class waiver.

(4) If the M&O contract does not have a technology transfer mission and is to be performed by a for-profit, large business firm and does not have advance class waiver under [10 CFR part 784](#), the patent rights clause at 970.5227-11 is inserted into the M&O contract, and the Technology Transfer Mission clause is inapplicable.

(5) If the contractor is an educational institution, a non-profit organization or a small business firm and is conducting privately funded technology transfer activities, involving the use of private funds to conduct licensing and marketing activities related to inventions made under the contract in accordance with the Bayh-Dole Act, DOE may modify the patent rights clause (970.5227-10) to address issues such as the disposition of royalties earned under the privately funded technology transfer program, the transfer of patent rights to a successor contractor, allowable cost restrictions concerning privately funded technology transfer activities, and the Government's freedom from any liability related to licensing under the contractor's privately funded technology transfer program.

(c) Contracting officers must consult with DOE patent counsel assisting the contracting activity or the Assistant General Counsel for Technology Transfer and Intellectual Property for assistance in selecting for use in the solicitation, negotiating, or approving appropriate patent rights clauses for a M&O contract. It may be appropriate to include more than one patent rights clause in a solicitation if the successful contractor could, for instance, be either an educational or a large business. If a large business may be selected for performance of a contract that will include a technology transfer clause, the solicitation must include the clause at 970.5227-12 to reflect the waiver that will likely be granted. If the solicitation includes more than one patent clause, it must include an explanation of the circumstances under which the appropriate clause will be used. The final award must contain only one patent rights clause.

§970.2703-2 Patent rights clause provisions for management and operating contractors

(a) *Allocation of Principal Rights: Bayh-Dole provisions.* If the management and operating contractor is an educational institution or nonprofit organization, the patent rights clause provided at 970.5227-10 must be inserted into the M&O contract. Such entities are beneficiaries of Bayh-Dole Act, including the paramount right of the contractor to elect to retain title to inventions conceived or first actually reduced to practice in performance of work under the contract, except in DOE-exempted areas of technology or in operation of DOE facilities primarily dedicated to naval nuclear propulsion or weapons related programs.

(b) *Allocation of Principal Rights: Government title.*

(1) The patent rights clause provided at 970.5227-11 must be incorporated into the M&O contract if the contractor is a for-profit, large business firm and the contract does not have a technology transfer mission or if, without regard to the type of contractor, the contract is for the operation of a DOE facility primarily dedicated to naval nuclear propulsion or weapons related programs. That clause provides for DOE's statutory obligation to take title to inventions

conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under an M&O contract, and does not contemplate an advance class waiver of Government rights in inventions, or participation by the contractor in technology transfer activities.

(2) While only in rare circumstances does a for-profit large business contractor whose contract contains no technology transfer mission receive rights in or title to inventions made under the contract, the contractor does have the right to request a license or foreign patent rights in inventions made under the contract, and may petition for a waiver of Government rights in identified inventions. The patent rights clause 970.5227-11 does not include many of the provisions of patent rights clauses 970.5227-10 and 970.5227-12, related to the filing of patent applications by the contractor, the granting of rights in inventions by the contractor to third parties (preference for United States industry), and conditions allowing the Government to grant licenses to third parties in inventions retained by the contractor (march-in rights). Any instrument granting rights in inventions made under a contract governed by patent rights clause 970.5227-11 must include these additional provisions within its terms and conditions.

(c) *Allocation of Principal Rights: Contractor right to elect title under an advance class waiver.* If the M&O contractor is a for-profit, large business firm and the Government has granted an advance class waiver of Government rights in inventions made in the course of or under the M&O contract, under the authority of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954 (42 U.S.C. 2182) and the Federal Nonnuclear Energy Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. 5908(c)), the patent rights clause provided at 970.5227-12 must be inserted into the M&O contract, unless the terms and conditions of such an approved waiver alter or replace the patent rights clause provisions pursuant to 10 CFR part 784.

(d) *Extensions of time-DOE discretion.* The patent rights clauses for M&O contracts require the contractor to take certain actions within prescribed time periods to comply with the contract and preserve its rights in inventions. The M&O contractor may request extensions of time in which to take such actions by submitting written justification to DOE, and DOE may grant the contractor's requests, on a case-by-case basis. If the time period expired due to negligence by the contractor, DOE may grant a request for an extension of time upon a showing by the contractor that corrective procedures are in place to avoid such negligence in the future. If a contractor is requesting an extension of time in which to elect to retain title to an invention, DOE may grant the request if the extension allows the contractor to conduct further experimentation, market research, or other analysis helpful to determine contractor interest in electing title to the invention, among other considerations. Generally, the extensions of time are for periods of between six (6) months to one (1) year.

(e) *Facilities license.* These include the rights to make, use, transfer, or otherwise dispose of all articles, materials, products, or processes embodying inventions or discoveries used or embodied in the facility regardless of whether or not conceived or first actually reduced to practice under or in the course of such a contract. The patent rights clauses, 970.5227-10, 970.5227-11, 970.5227-12, each contain a provision granting the Government this facilities license.

(f) *Deletion of classified inventions provision.* If DOE determines that the research, development, demonstration or production work to be performed during the course of a management and operating contract most probably will not involve classified subject matter or result in any inventions that require security classification, DOE patent counsel may advise the contracting officer to delete the patent rights clause provision entitled, "Classified Inventions" from the M&O contract.

(g) *Alternate 1-Weapons Related Research or Production.* If DOE grants technology transfer authority to a DOE facility, pursuant to Public Law 101-189, section 3133(d), and the DOE owned facility is

involved in weapons related research and development, or production, then Alternate 1 of the patent rights clauses must be inserted into the M&O contract. Alternate 1 defines weapons related subject inventions and restricts the contractor's rights with respect to such inventions.

§970.2704 Rights in data

§970.2704-1 General

(a) Rights in data relating to the performance of the contract and to all facilities are significant in assuring continuity of the management and operation of DOE facilities. It is crucial in assuring DOE's continuing ability to perform its statutory missions that DOE obtain rights to all data produced or specifically used by its management and operating contractors and appropriate subcontractors. In order to obtain the necessary rights in technical data, DOE contracting officers shall assure that management and operating contracts contain either the Rights in Data clause at [48 CFR 970.5227-1](#), Rights in Data-Facilities, or the clause at [48 CFR 970.5227-2](#), Rights in Data-Technology Transfer. Selection of the appropriate clause is dependent upon whether technology transfer is a mission of the management and operating contract pursuant to the National Competitiveness Technology Transfer Act of 1989, Public Law 101-189, ([15 U.S.C. 3711 et seq.](#), as amended). If technology transfer is not a mission of the management and operating contract, the clause at [48 CFR 970.5227-1](#), Rights in Data-Facilities, shall be used. In those instances in which technology transfer is a mission of the contract, the clause at [48 CFR 970.5227-2](#), Rights in Data-Technology Transfer, shall be used.

(b) Employees of the management and operating contractor may not be used to assist in the preparation of a proposal or bid for services which are similar or related to those being performed under the contract, which are to be performed by the contractor or its parent or affiliate organization for commercial customers unless the employee has been separated from work under the DOE contract for such period as the Head of the Contracting Activity or designee shall have directed.

§970.2704-2 Procedures

(a) The clauses at [48 CFR 970.5227-1](#), Rights in Data-Facilities, and [48 CFR 970.5227-2](#), Rights in Data-Technology Transfer, both provide generally for Government ownership and for unlimited rights in the Government for all data first produced in the performance of the contract and unlimited rights in data specifically used in the performance of the contract. Both clauses provide that, subject to patent, security, and other provisions of the contract, the contractor may use contract data for its private purposes. The contractor, under either clause, must treat any data furnished by DOE or acquired from other Government agencies or private entities in the performance of their contracts in accordance with any restrictive legends contained therein.

(b) Since both clauses secure access to and, if requested, delivery of technical data used in the performance of the contract, there is generally no need to use the Additional Technical Data Requirements clause at [48 CFR 52.227-16](#) in the management and operating contract.

(c)

(1) Paragraph (d) of the clause at [48 CFR 970.5227-1](#), Rights in Data-Facilities, and paragraph (f) of the clause at [48 CFR 970.5227-2](#), Rights in Data-Technology Transfer, provide for the inclusion in subcontracts of the Rights in Technical Data-General clause at [48 CFR 52.227-14](#), with Alternate V, and modified in accordance with DEAR 927.409. Those clauses also provide for the inclusion in appropriate subcontracts Alternates II, III, and IV to the clause at [48 CFR 52.227-14](#) with DOE's prior approval and the inclusion of the Additional Technical Data Requirements clause at [48 CFR 52.227-16](#) in all subcontracts for research, development, or demonstration and all other subcontracts having special requirements for the production or delivery of data. In subcontracts, including subcontracts for related support services, involving the design or operation of any plants or facilities or specially designed equipment for such plants or facilities that are managed or operated by the contractor under its contract with DOE, the management and operating contractor shall use the Rights in Data-Facilities clause at [48 CFR 970.5227-1](#).

(2) Where, however, a subcontract is to be awarded by the management and operating contractor in connection with a program, as discussed at 927.404-70, which provides statutory authority to protect from public disclosure, data first produced under contracts awarded pursuant to the program, contracting officers shall ensure that the management and operating contractor includes in that subcontract the rights in data clause provided by DOE Patent Counsel, consistent with any accompanying guidance.

(3) Management and operating contractors and higher-tier subcontractors shall not use their power to award subcontracts as economic leverage to acquire rights in a subcontractor's limited rights data or restricted computer software for their private use, nor may they acquire rights in a subcontractor's limited rights data or restricted computer software except through the use of Alternate II or III to the clause at [48 CFR 52.227-14](#), respectively, without the prior approval of DOE Patent Counsel.

(d)

(1) Paragraphs (e) and (f) of the clause at [48 CFR 970.5227-1](#), Rights in Data-Facilities, and paragraphs (g) and (h) of the clause at [48 CFR 970.5227-2](#), Rights in Data-Technology Transfer, provide for the contractor's granting a nonexclusive license in any limited rights data and restricted computer software specifically used in performance of the contract.

(2) In certain instances the objectives of DOE would be frustrated if the Government did not obtain, at the time of contracting, limited license rights on behalf of responsible third parties and the Government, and to limited rights data or restricted computer software or both necessary for the practice of subject inventions or data first produced or delivered in the performance of the contract. This situation may arise in the performance of management and operating contracts and contracts for the management or operation of a DOE facility or site. Contracting officers should consult with program officials and Patent Counsel. No such rights should be obtained from a small business or non-profit organization, unless similar rights in background inventions of the small business or non-profit organization have been authorized in accordance with [35 U.S.C. 202\(f\)](#). Where such a background license is in DOE's interest, a provision that provides substantially as Alternate VI at [48 CFR 952.227-14](#) should be added to the appropriate clause, [48 CFR 970.5227-1](#), Rights in Data-Facilities, or [48 CFR 970.5227-2](#), Rights in Data-Technology Transfer.

(e) The Rights in Data-Technology Transfer clause at [48 CFR 970.5227-2](#) differs from the clause at [48 CFR 970.5227-1](#), Rights in Data-Facilities, in the context of its more detailed treatment of copyright. In management and operating contracts that have technology transfer as a mission, the right to assert copyright in data first produced under the contract will be a valuable right, and commercialization of such data, including computer software, will assist the management and operating contractor in advancing the technology transfer mission of the contract. The clause at [48 CFR 970.5227-2](#), Rights in Data-Technology Transfer, provides for DOE approval of DOE's taking a limited copyright license for a period of five years, and, in certain rare cases, specified longer periods in order to contribute to commercialization of the data.

(f) Contracting officers should consult with Patent Counsel to assure that requirements regarding royalties and conflicts of interest associated with asserting copyright in data first produced under the contract are appropriately addressed in the Technology Transfer Mission clause ([48 CFR 970.5227-3](#)) of the management and operating contract. Where it is not otherwise clear which DOE program funded the development of a computer software package, such as where the development was funded out of a contractor's overhead account, the DOE program which was the primary source of funding for the entire contract is deemed to have administrative responsibility. This issue may arise, among others, in the decision whether to grant the contractor permission to assert copyright. See paragraph (e) of the Rights in Data-Technology Transfer clause at [970.5227-2](#).

(g) In management and operating contracts involving access to DOE-owned Category C-24 restricted data, as set forth in [10 CFR part 725](#), DOE has reserved the right to receive reasonable compensation for the use of its inventions and discoveries, including its related restricted data and technology. Alternate I to each clause shall be used where access to Category C-24 restricted data is contemplated in the performance of a contract.

§970.2704-3 Contract clauses

(a) The contracting officer shall insert the clause at [48 CFR 970.5227-1](#), Rights in Data-Facilities, in management and operating contracts which do not contain the clause at [48 CFR 970.5227-2](#), Rights in Data-Technology Transfer. The contracting officer shall include the clause with its Alternate I in contracts where access to Category C-24 restricted data, as set forth in [10 CFR part 725](#), is to be provided to contractors.

(b) The contracting officer shall insert the clause at [970.5227-2](#), Rights in Data-Technology Transfer, in management and operating contracts which contain the clause at [970.5227-3](#), Technology Transfer Mission. The contracting officer shall include the clause with its Alternate I in contracts where access to Category C-24 restricted data, as set forth in [10 CFR part 725](#), is to be provided to contractors.

§970.2770 Technology Transfer

§970.2770-1 General

This subpart prescribes policies and procedures for implementing the National Competitiveness Technology Transfer Act of 1989, Public Law 101-189, ([15 U.S.C. 3711 et seq.](#), as amended). The Act requires that technology transfer be established as a mission of each Government-owned laboratory operated under contract by a non-Federal entity. The National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1994 expanded the definition of “laboratory” to include weapon production facilities that are operated for national security purposes and are engaged in the production, maintenance, testing, or dismantlement of a nuclear weapon or its components.

§970.2770-2 Policy

All new awards for or extensions of existing DOE laboratory or weapon production facility management and operating contracts shall have technology transfer, including authorization to award Cooperative Research and Development Agreements (CRADAs), as a laboratory or facility mission under Section 11(a)(1) of the Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1980, Public Law 96-480 ([15 U.S.C. 3701 et seq.](#), as amended). A management and operating contractor for a facility not deemed to be a laboratory or weapon production facility may be authorized on a case-by-case basis to support the DOE technology transfer mission including, but not limited to, participating in CRADAs awarded by DOE laboratories and weapon production facilities.

§970.2770-3 Technology transfer and patent rights

The National Competitiveness Technology Transfer Act of 1989 (NCTTA) established technology transfer as a mission for Government-owned, contractor-operated laboratories, including weapons production facilities, and authorizes those laboratories to negotiate and award cooperative research and development agreements with public and private entities for purposes of conducting research and development and transferring technology to the private sector. In implementing the NCTTA, DOE has negotiated technology transfer clauses with the contractors managing and operating its laboratories. Those technology transfer clauses must be read in concert with the patent rights clause required by this subpart. Thus, each management and operating contractor holds title to subject inventions for the benefit of the laboratory or facility being managed and operated by that contractor.

§970.2770-4 Contract clause

- (a) The contracting officer shall insert the clause at 970.5227-3, Technology Transfer Mission, in each solicitation for a new or an extension of an existing laboratory or weapon production facility management and operating contract.
- (b) If the contractor is a nonprofit organization or small business eligible under [35 U.S.C. 200 et seq.](#), to receive title to any inventions under the contract and proposes to fund at private expense the maintaining, licensing, and marketing of the inventions, the contracting officer shall use the basic clause with its Alternate I.
- (c) If the facility is operated for national security purposes and engaged in the production,

maintenance, testing, or dismantlement of a nuclear weapon or its components, the contracting officer shall use the basic clause with its Alternate II.

Subpart 970-28 - Bonds and Insurance

§970.2803 Insurance

§970.2803-1 Workers' Compensation Insurance

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) *Policies and requirements.*

(1) Workers' compensation insurance protects employers against liability imposed by workers' compensation laws for injury or death to employees arising out of, or in the course of, their employment. This type of insurance is required by state laws unless employers have acceptable programs of self-insurance.

(2) *Special requirements.* Certain workers' compensation laws contain provisions which result in limiting the protection afforded persons subject to such laws. The policy with respect to these limitations as they affect persons employed by management and operating contractors is set forth as follows:

(i) *Elective provisions.* Some worker's compensation laws permit an employer to elect not to be subject to its provisions. It is DOE policy to require these contractors to be subject to workers' compensation laws in jurisdictions permitting election.

(ii) *Statutory immunity.* Under the provisions of some workers' compensation laws, certain types of employers; *e.g.*, nonprofit educational institutions, are relieved from liability. If a contractor has a statutory option to accept liability, it is DOE policy to require the contractor to do so.

(iii) *Limited medical benefits.* Some workers' compensation laws limit the liability of the employer for medical care to a maximum dollar amount or to a specified period of time. In such cases, a contractor's workers' compensation insurance policy should contain a standard extrastatutory medical coverage endorsement.

(iv) *Limits on occupational disease coverage and employers' liability.* Some workers' compensation laws do not provide coverage for all occupational diseases. In such situations, a contractor's workers' compensation insurance policy should contain voluntary

coverage for all occupational diseases.

(3) *Contractor “employees’ benefit plan” - self-insurers.* The policies and requirements set forth in paragraph (a)(2) of this section apply where management and operating contractors purchase workers’ compensation insurance. With respect to self-insured contractors, the objectives specified in paragraph (a)(2) also shall be met through primary or excess workers’ compensation and employers’ liability insurance policy(ies) or an approved combination thereof. “Employees’ benefit plans” which were established in prior years may be continued to contrast termination at existing benefit levels.

(b) Assignment of responsibilities.

(1) Office of Contract and Resource Management, within the Headquarters procurement organization, other officials, and the Heads of Contracting Activities, consistent with their delegations of responsibility, shall assure management and operating contracts are consistent with the policies and requirements of paragraph (a) of this section.

(2) In discharging assigned responsibility, the Heads of Contracting Activities shall:

(i) Periodically review workers’ compensation insurance programs of management and operating contractors in the light of applicable workers’ compensation statutes to assure conformance with the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section.

(ii) Evaluate the adequacy of coverage of “self-insured” workers” compensation programs;

(iii) Provide arrangements for the administration of any existing “employees” benefit plans until such plans” are terminated; and

(iv) Submit to the Office of Contract and Resource Management, within the Headquarters procurement organization, all proposals for the modification of existing “employees’ benefit plans.”

(3) The Office of Contract and Resource Management, within the Headquarters procurement organization, is responsible for approving management and operating contractor “employees’ benefit plans.”

§970.2803-2 Contract clause

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

The contracting officer shall insert the clause at [48 CFR 970.5228-1](#), Insurance-Litigation and Claims, in all management and operating contracts. Paragraphs (h)(3) and (j)(2) of that clause apply to a nonprofit contractor only to the extent specifically provided in the individual contract.

Subpart 970-29 - Taxes

§970.2902 Federal excise taxes

§970.2902-1 Exemptions from Federal excise taxes

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) The exemption respecting taxes on communication services or facilities has been held to extend to such services when furnished to DOE management and operating contractors who pay for such services or facilities from advances made to them by DOE under their contracts.

(b) Where it is considered that a request for an additional exemption in the performance of a management and operating contract would be justified, a recommendation that such a request be made should be forwarded to the Chief Financial Officer, Headquarters.

(c) Where tax exemption certificates are required in connection with the taxes cited in this section, the Head of the Contracting Activity will supply standard Government forms (SF 1094, U.S. Tax Exemption Certificate) on request.

§970.2903 State and local taxes

§970.2903-1 Applicability of state and local taxes to the government

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36372](#), July 22, 2009.

It is DOE policy to secure those immunities or exemptions from state and local taxes to which it is entitled under the Federal Constitution or state laws. In carrying out this policy, the Heads of Contracting Activities shall:

(a) Take all necessary steps to preclude payment of any taxes for which any of the immunities or exemptions cited in this subpart are available. Advice of Counsel should be sought as to the availability of such immunities or exemptions;

(b) Acquire directly and furnish to contractors as Government furnished property, equipment, material, or services when, in the opinion of the Head of the Contracting Activity:

(1) Such direct acquisition will result in substantial savings to the Government, taking into consideration any additional administrative costs;

(2) Such direct acquisition will not have a substantial adverse effect on the relationship between DOE and its contractor; and

(3) Such direct acquisition will not have a substantial adverse effect on the DOE program or schedules.

§970.2904 Contract clauses

§970.2904-1 Management and operating contracts

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) Pursuant to [48 CFR 29.401-6\(b\)](#), the clause at [48 CFR 52.229-10](#), State of New Mexico Gross Receipts and Compensating Tax, is applicable to management and operating contracts that meet the three conditions stated. The contracting officer shall modify paragraph (b) of the clause to replace the phrase “Allowable Cost and Payment clause” with the phrase “Payments and advances.”

(b) Contracting officers shall include the clause at [48 CFR 970.5229-1](#), State and Local Taxes, in management and operating contracts.

Subpart 970-30 - Cost Accounting Standards

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

§970.3002 CAS program requirements

§970.3002-1 Applicability

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

The provisions of [48 CFR part 30](#) and 48 CFR chapter 99 (FAR Appendix) shall be followed for management and operating contracts.

Subpart 970-31 - Contract Cost Principles and Procedures

§970.3101-00-70 Scope of subpart

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

- (a) The Procurement Executive is responsible for developing and revising the policy and procedures for the determination of allowable costs reimbursable under a management and operating contract, and for coordination with other Headquarters' offices having joint interests.
- (b) The Head of the Contracting Activity is responsible for following the policy, principles and standards set forth in this subpart in establishing the compensation and reimbursement provisions of contracts and subcontracts and for submission of deviations for Headquarters consideration and approval.

§970.3101-9 Advance agreements (DOE coverage-paragraph (i))

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

- (i) At any time, in accordance with the contract terms and conditions, the contracting officer may pursue an advance agreement in connection with any cost item under a contract.

§970.3101-10 Cost certification

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

- (a) Certain contracts require certification of the costs proposed for final payment purposes. Section [48 CFR 970.4207-03-02](#) states the administrative procedures for the certification provisions and the related contract clause prescription.
- (b) If unallowable costs are included in final cost settlement proposals, penalties may be assessed. Section [48 CFR 970.4207-03-02](#) states the administrative procedures for penalty assessment provisions and the related clause prescription.

§970.3102-3-70 Home office expenses

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) For on-site work, DOE's fee for management and operating contracts, determined under the policy of and calculated per the procedures in [48 CFR 970.1504-1-3](#), generally provides adequate compensation for home or corporate office general and administrative expenses incurred in the general management of the contractor's business as a whole.

(1) DOE recognizes that some Home Office Expenses are incurred for the benefit of a management and operating contract. DOE has elected to recognize that benefit through fee due to the difficulty of determining the dollar value applicable to any management and operating contract. The difficulty arises because:

(i) The general construct of a management and operating contract results in minimal Home Office involvement in the contract work, and

(ii) Conventional Home Office Expense allocation techniques that use bases such as total operating costs, labor dollars, hours etc., are not appropriate because they inherently assume significant contractor investment (in terms of its own resources, such as, labor, material, overhead, etc.). Contractor investments are minimal under DOE's operating and management contracts. The contracts are totally financed by DOE advance payments, and DOE provides government-owned facilities, property, and other needed resources.

(2) From time to time, the fee for a management and operating contract may not be adequate compensation for Home Office Expenses incurred for the benefit of the contract. An indication that such a case exists is the need for significant home office support to deal with issues at the site that occur without the fault or negligence of the contractor, for example, the need for home office legal support to deal with third party, environmental, safety, or health issues.

(3) In such a case, the contracting officer, after obtaining the HCA's approval, may consider a contractor request for additional compensation. The contractor may request:

(i) Fee in addition to its normal fee (but see [48 CFR 970.1504-1-3\(b\)\(1\)](#) if the contract is for the management and operation of a laboratory); or

(ii) Compensation on the basis of actual cost.

(4) Because the contract's fee provides some compensation for Home Office Expenses, the contractor's request for additional compensation must always be for an amount less than the Home Office Expenses that are incurred for the benefit of the management and operating contract.

(b) For off-site work, the DOE allows Home Office Expenses under architect-engineer, supply and research contracts with commercial contractors performing the work in their own facilities. Home Office Expenses may, however, be included for reimbursement under such DOE off-site architect-engineer, supply and research contracts, only to the extent that they are determined, after careful examination, to be allowable, reasonable, and properly allocable to the work. Work performed in a contractor's own facilities under a management and operating or construction contract may likewise be allowed to bear the properly allocable portion of allowable Home Office Expenses.

§970.3102-05 Application of cost principles

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

§970.3102-05-4 Bonding costs. (DOE coverage-paragraph (d))

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

(d) The allowability of bonding costs shall be determined pursuant to [48 CFR 970.5228-1](#), Insurance-litigation and claims.

§970.3102-05-6 Compensation for personal services. (DOE coverage-paragraphs (a) and (p))

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

(a)(6) In determining the reasonableness of compensation, the compensation of each individual contractor employee normally need not be subjected to review and approval. Generally, the compensation paid individual employees should be left to the judgment of contractors subject to the limitations of DOE-approved compensation policies, programs, classification systems, and schedules, and amounts of money authorized for wage and salary increases for groups of employees. However, the contracting officer shall designate a compensation threshold appropriate for the particular situation. The contract shall specifically provide that contracting officer approval is required for compensating an individual contractor employee above the threshold if a total of 50 percent or more of such compensation is reimbursed under DOE cost-type contracts. For purposes of designating the threshold, total compensation includes only the employee's salary and cash bonus or incentive compensation.

(7)

(i) Reimbursable costs for compensation for personal services are to be set forth in a personnel appendix which is a part of the contract. This personnel appendix shall be negotiated using the principles and policies of [48 CFR 31.205-6](#), Compensation, as supplemented by this section, 970.3102-05-6, and other pertinent parts of the DEAR. Costs that are unallowable under other contract terms shall not be allowable as compensation for personnel services.

(ii) The personnel appendix sets forth in detail personnel costs and related expenses allowable under the contract and documents personnel policies, practices and plans which have been found acceptable by the contracting officer. The contractor will advise DOE of any proposed changes in any matters covered by these policies, practices or plans which relate to personnel costs. The personnel appendix may be modified from time to time in writing by mutual agreement of the contractor and DOE without execution of an amendment to the contract. Such modifications shall be evidenced by execution of written numbered approval letters from the contracting officer or his representative. Types of personnel costs and related expenses addressed in the

personnel appendix, or amendments thereto, are as follows: Salaries and wages; bonuses and incentive compensation; overtime, shift differential, holiday, and other premium pay for time worked; welfare benefits and retirement programs; paid time off, and salaries and wages to employees in their capacity as union stewards and committeemen for time spent in handling grievances, or serving on labor management (contractor) committees provided, however, that the contracting officer's approval is required in each instance of total compensation to an individual employee above an annual rate as specified in the personnel appendix.

(p)

(1) Notwithstanding the costs cited in this subsection, incurred for compensation of a senior executive in excess of the benchmark compensation amount determined applicable for the contractor fiscal year by the Administrator, Office of Federal Procurement Policy, are unallowable. Allowable costs of executive compensation shall be determined pursuant to Federal Acquisition Regulation 31.205-6(p).

§970.3102-05-18 Independent research and development and bid and proposal costs. (DOE coverage-paragraphs (c))

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

(c) Independent Research and Development and Bid and Proposal costs are unallowable. However, contracting officer approved Laboratory Directed Research and Development costs and those costs incurred in support of the Department's various reimbursable programs are allowable.

§970.3102-05-19 Insurance and indemnification

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

The supplemental material on the costs of insurance and indemnification is found in [48 CFR 970.5228-1](#), Insurance-Litigation and Claims.

§970.3102-05-22 Lobbying and political activity costs. (DOE coverage-paragraph(b))

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

(b) Costs of the following activities are excepted from [48 CFR 31.205-22](#), Lobbying and political activity costs, coverage, provided that the resultant costs are reasonable and otherwise fall into the following exceptions:

(1) Providing Members of Congress, their staff members or staff of cognizant legislative committees, in response to a request (written or oral, prior or contemporaneous) from Members of Congress, their staff members or staff of cognizant legislative committees, or as otherwise directed by the Contracting

Officer, information or expert advice of a factual, technical, or scientific nature, with respect to topics directly related to the performance of the contract or proposed legislation. In providing this information or expert advice, the contractor shall indicate to the recipient that it is not presenting the views of DOE. Reasonable costs for transportation, lodging or meals incurred by contractor employees for the purpose of providing such information or expert advice shall also be reimbursable, provided the request for such information or expert advice is a prior written request signed by a Member of Congress.

(2) Providing State legislatures or subdivisions thereof, their staff members, or staff of cognizant legislative committees, in response to a prior written request from a State legislator, or as otherwise directed by the Contracting Officer, information or expert advice of a factual, technical, or scientific nature, with respect to topics directly related to the performance of the contract or proposed legislation. In providing this information or expert advice, the contractor shall indicate to the recipient that it is not presenting the views of DOE. Reasonable costs for transportation, lodging, or meals incurred by contractor employees shall be reimbursable.

§970.3102-05-28 Other business expenses. (DOE coverage-paragraph (i))

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

(i) Reasonable costs associated with the establishment and maintenance of financial institution accounts in connection with the work hereunder are allowable, including, but not limited to, service charges, the cost of disbursing cash, necessary guards, cashiers, and paymasters. If payments to employees are made by check, facilities and arrangements for cashing checks may be provided without expense to the employees, subject to the approval of the contracting officer.

§970.3102-05-30 Patent costs and technology transfer costs

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) For management and operating contracts that do not include the clause at 970.5227-3, Technology Transfer Mission, the cost principle at [48 CFR 31.205-30](#) applies.

(b) For management and operating contracts that do include the clause at 970.5227-3, Technology Transfer Mission, the following patent and technology transfer costs are allowable:

(1) Costs of preparing invention disclosures, reports, and other patent related documents required by the contract;

(2) Costs of searching the art relating to invention disclosures;

(3) Costs incurred in connection with the filing and prosecution of patent applications for subject inventions, except where those costs are incurred as part of a privately funded technology

transfer program recognized under the contract; and

(4) Other costs incurred in accordance with the patent rights clause and the Technology Transfer Mission clause included in the contract.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

§970.3102-05-33 Professional and consultant service costs. (Department coverage-paragraph (g))

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

(g) Section 931.205-33 is applicable to management and operating contracts under this part.

[[66 FR 4627](#), Jan. 18, 2001]

§970.3102-05-46 Travel costs

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) *Costs for transportation, lodging, meals, and incidental expenses.*

(1) Costs incurred by contractor personnel on official company business are allowable, subject to the limitations contained in this subsection. Costs for transportation may be based on mileage rates, actual costs incurred, or on a combination thereof, provided the method used results in a reasonable charge. Costs for lodging, meals, and incidental expenses may be based on per diem, actual expenses, or a combination thereof, provided the method used results in a reasonable charge.

(2) Except as provided in paragraph (a)(3) of this subsection, costs incurred for lodging, meals, and incidental expenses (as defined in the regulations cited in paragraphs (a)(2)(i) through (iii) of this subsection) shall be considered to be reasonable and allowable only to the extent that they do not exceed on a daily basis the maximum per diem rates in effect at the time of travel as set forth in the-

(i) Federal Travel Regulation, prescribed by the General Services Administration (41 CFR chapters 300 through 304), for travel in the conterminous 48 United States, available on a subscription basis from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402, Stock No. 922-002-00000-2;

(ii) Joint Travel Regulations, DoD Civilian Personnel, Appendix A, prescribed by the Department of Defense, for travel in Alaska, Hawaii, The Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, and territories and possessions of the United States, available on a subscription basis from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402, Stock No. 908-010-00000-1; or

(iii) Standardized Regulations (Government Civilians, Foreign Areas), section 925, "Maximum Travel Per Diem Allowances for Foreign Areas," prescribed by the Department of State, for travel in areas not covered in paragraphs (a)(2)(i) and (ii) of this subsection, available on a subscription basis from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402, Stock No. 744-008-00000-0.

(3) In special or unusual situations, actual costs in excess of the maximum per diem rates are allowable provided that such amounts do not exceed the higher amounts authorized for Federal civilian employees as permitted in the regulations referenced in paragraphs (a)(2)(i), (ii), or (iii) of this subsection. For such higher amounts to be allowable, all of the following conditions must be met:

(i) One of the conditions warranting approval of the actual expense method, as set forth in the regulations referred to in paragraphs (a)(2)(i), (ii), or (iii) of this subsection, must exist.

(ii) A written justification for use of the higher amounts must be approved by an officer of the contractor's organization or designee to ensure that the authority is properly administered and controlled to prevent abuse.

(iii) If it becomes necessary to exercise the authority to use the higher actual expense method repetitively or on a continuing basis in a particular area, the contractor must obtain advance approval from the contracting officer.

(iv) Documentation to support actual costs incurred shall be in accordance with the contractor's established practices, subject to paragraph (a)(7) of this subsection, and provided that a receipt is required for each expenditure of \$75.00 or more. The approved justification required by paragraph (a)(3)(ii) and, if applicable, paragraph (a)(3)(iii) of this subsection must be retained.

(4) Paragraphs (a)(2) and (a)(3) of this subsection do not incorporate the regulations cited in paragraphs (a)(2)(i), (ii), and (iii) of this subsection in their entirety. Only the maximum per diem rates, the definitions of lodging, meals, and incidental expenses, and the regulatory coverage dealing with special or unusual situations are incorporated in this subsection.

(5) An advance agreement (see [48 CFR 31.109](#) and [48 CFR 970.3101-9](#)) with respect to compliance with paragraphs (a)(2) and (a)(3) of this subsection may be useful and desirable.

(6)

(i) The maximum per diem rates referenced in paragraph (a)(2) of this subsection generally would not constitute a reasonable daily charge-

(A) When no lodging costs are incurred; and/or

(B) On partial travel days (*e.g.*, day of departure and return).

(ii) Appropriate downward adjustments from the maximum per diem rates would normally be required under these circumstances. While these adjustments need not be calculated in accordance with the Federal Travel Regulation or Joint Travel Regulations, they must

result in a reasonable charge.

(7) Costs shall be allowable only if the following information is documented:

- (i) Date and place (city, town, or other similar designation) of the expenses;
- (ii) Purpose of the trip; and
- (iii) Name of person on trip and that person's title or relationship to the contractor.

(b) Travel costs incurred in the normal course of overall administration of the business are allowable and shall be treated as indirect costs.

(c) Travel costs directly attributable to specific contract performance are allowable and may be charged to the contract under [48 CFR 31.202](#).

(d) Airfare costs in excess of the lowest customary standard, coach, or equivalent airfare offered during normal business hours are unallowable except when such accommodations require circuitous routing, require travel during unreasonable hours, excessively prolong travel, result in increased cost that would offset transportation savings, are not reasonably adequate for the physical or medical needs of the traveler, or are not reasonably available to meet mission requirements. However, in order for airfare costs in excess of the standard airfare to be allowable, the applicable condition(s) must be documented and justified.

(e)

(1) "Cost of travel by contractor-owned, -leased, or -chartered aircraft," as used in this paragraph, includes the cost of lease, charter, operation (including personnel), maintenance, depreciation, insurance, and other related costs.

(2) The costs of travel by contractor-owned, -leased, or -chartered aircraft are limited to the standard airfare described in paragraph (d) of this subsection for the flight destination unless travel by such aircraft is specifically required by contract specification, term, or condition, or a higher amount is approved by the contracting officer. A higher amount may be agreed to when one or more of the circumstances for justifying higher than standard airfare listed in paragraph (d) of this subsection are applicable, or when an advance agreement under paragraph (e)(3) of this subsection has been executed. In all cases, travel by contractor-owned, -leased, or -chartered aircraft must be fully documented and justified. For each contractor-owned, -leased, or -chartered aircraft used for any business purpose which is charged or allocated, directly or indirectly, to a Government contract, the contractor must maintain and make available manifest/logs for all flights on such company aircraft. As a minimum, the manifest/log shall indicate-

- (i) Date, time, and points of departure;
- (ii) Destination, date, and time of arrival;
- (iii) Name of each passenger and relationship to the contractor;
- (iv) Authorization for trip; and

(v) Purpose of trip.

(3) Where an advance agreement is proposed (see 31.109), consideration may be given to the following:

(i) Whether scheduled commercial airlines or other suitable, less costly, travel facilities are available at reasonable times, with reasonable frequency, and serve the required destinations conveniently;

(ii) Whether increased flexibility in scheduling results in time savings and more effective use of personnel that would outweigh additional travel costs.

(f) Costs of contractor-owned or -leased automobiles, as used in this paragraph, include the costs of lease, operation (including personnel), maintenance, depreciation, insurance, etc. These costs are allowable, if reasonable, to the extent that the automobiles are used for company business. That portion of the cost of company-furnished automobiles that relates to personal use by employees (including transportation to and from work) is compensation for personal services and is unallowable as stated in [48 CFR 31.205-6\(m\)\(2\)](#).

§970.3102-05-47 Costs related to legal and other proceedings. (DOE coverage-paragraph (h))

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

(h) *Costs associated with whistleblower actions.* Section 931.205-47(h) of this chapter is applicable to management and operating contracts under this part and must be included in the contract's cost reimbursement subcontracts.

§970.3102-05-70 Preexisting conditions

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

Clause [48 CFR 970.5231-4](#), Preexisting conditions, provides guidance on situations where this category of costs may be allowable.

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000. Redesignated at [67 FR 14873](#), Mar. 28, 2002]

§970.3170 Contract clause

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

The contracting officer shall insert the clause at [48 CFR 970.5231-4](#), Preexisting Conditions, in all management and operating contracts.

(a) The contracting officer shall include the clause with its Alternate I in contracts with incumbent management and operating contractors.

(b) The contracting officer shall include the clause with its Alternate II in contracts with management and operating contractors not previously working at that particular site or facility.

Subpart 970-32 - Contract Financing

§970.3200 Policy

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

It is the policy of the DOE to finance management and operating contracts through advance payments and the use of special financial institution accounts.

§970.3200-1 Reduction or suspension of advance, partial, or progress payments

(a) The procedures prescribed at [48 CFR 32.006](#) shall be followed regarding the reduction or suspension of payments under management and operating contracts.

(b) Agency head responsibilities under [48 CFR 32.006](#) have been delegated to the Senior Procurement Executive.

(c) The remedy coordination official is responsible for receiving, assessing, and making recommendations to the Senior Procurement Executive.

§970.3200-1-1 Contract clause

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

The contracting officer shall insert the clause at [48 CFR 970.5232-1](#), Reduction or suspension of contract payments, in management and operating contracts.

§970.3204 Advance payments

§970.3204-1 Applicability

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

- (a) The Head of the Contracting Activity shall authorize advance payments without interest, and approve the findings, determinations and the contract terms and conditions concerning advance payments in accordance with the procedures set forth in 48 CFR subpart 32.4, Advance Payments, as supplemented by 48 CFR subpart 932.4.
- (b) Advance payments shall be made under a payments cleared financing arrangement for deposit in a special financial institution account or, at the option of the Government, by direct payment or other payment mechanism to the contractor.
- (c) Prior to providing any advance payments, the contracting officer shall enter into an agreement with the contractor and a financial institution regarding a special financial institution account where the advanced funds will be deposited by the Government. Such agreement shall:
- (1) Provide that DOE shall retain title to the unexpended balance of funds in the special financial institution account including collections, if any, deposited by the contractor;
 - (2) Provide that the title in paragraph (c)(1) of this subsection shall be superior to any claim or lien of the financial institution of deposit or others; and
 - (3) Incorporate all applicable requirements, as determined by the Office of Chief Financial Officer.
- (d) Deviations from the requirements cited in paragraph (c) of this subsection shall be considered a deviation requiring approval of the Head of the Contracting Activity.
- (e) Letter-of-credit arrangements shall be prepared in accordance with [48 CFR 32.406](#), Letters of Credit, and shall be coordinated between the procurement and finance organizations.

§970.3270 Standard financial management clauses

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

- (a) The following DEAR and FAR clauses are standard financial management clauses. The contracting officer shall insert them in all management and operating contracts:
- (1) [48 CFR 970.5232-2](#), *Payments and Advances*.
 - (i) The contracting officer shall insert the basic clause with its Alternate I if a separate fixed-fee is provided for a separate item of work.
 - (ii) The contracting officer shall insert the basic clause with its Alternate II when total available fee provisions in the basic clause are used.

(iii) The contracting officer shall insert the basic clause with its Alternate III in management and operating contracts with integrated accounting systems.

(iv) The contracting officer shall insert the basic clause with its Alternate IV in management and operating contracts without integrated accounting systems.

(2) [48 CFR 970.5232-3](#), *Accounts, records, and inspection*. If the contract includes the clause at [48 CFR 52.215-11](#), Price Reduction for Defective Cost or Pricing Data, the contracting officer shall use the clause with its Alternate I.

(3) [48 CFR 970.5232-4](#), *Obligation of funds*. The contracting officer may use the clause with its Alternate I in contracts which, expressly or otherwise, provide a contractual basis for equivalent controls in a separate clause.

(4) [48 CFR 970.5203-1](#), Management controls.

(5) [48 CFR 970.5232-5](#), Liability with respect to Cost Accounting Standards.

(6) [48 CFR 970.5232-6](#), Work for others funding authorization.

(7) [48 CFR 52.230-2](#), Cost Accounting Standards.

(8) [48 CFR 52.230-6](#), Administration of Cost Accounting Standards.

(b) The following DEAR clauses are standard financial management clauses. The contracting officer shall insert them in all management and operating contracts with integrated accounting systems:

(1) [48 CFR 970.5232-7](#), Financial management system.

(2) [48 CFR 970.5232-8](#), Integrated accounting.

(c) Any deviations from the standard financial management clauses specified in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section require the approval of the Head of the Contracting Activity and the written concurrence of the Department's Chief Financial Officer.

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [72 FR 29081](#), May 24, 2007]

Subpart 970-34 - Major System Acquisition

§970.3400 General requirements

§970.3400-1 Mission-oriented solicitation

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

Contractors shall be required to promptly advise the DOE contracting officer of any advance notices of, or solicitations for, requirements which would logically involve DOE facilities or resources operated or managed by the contractor, which are received from another agency pursuant to [48 CFR 34.005](#). Management and operating contracts shall provide that the contractor shall not respond or otherwise propose to participate in response to the requirements of such solicitations unless the contractor has obtained the prior written approval of the DOE manager of the field activity having cognizance over the contract. Such approval shall not be given except in compliance with applicable DOE directives, and with the concurrence of the cognizant Senior Program Official.

Subpart 970-35 - Research and Development Contracting

§970.3500 Scope of subpart

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

This subpart implements [48 CFR 35.017](#) regarding the establishment, use, review, and termination of Federally Funded Research and Development Centers (FFRDCs) sponsored by the Department of Energy.

§970.3501 Federally funded research and development centers

§970.3501-1 Sponsoring agreements

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) The contract award document constitutes the sponsoring agreement between the Department of Energy and the contractor operating an FFRDC.

(b) The contract statement of work shall define the purpose and mission of the FFRDC.

(c) Other elements of the sponsoring agreement which shall be incorporated into the contract include:

(1) The appropriate termination clause of the contract (as prescribed in 48 CFR subpart 49.5).

(2) The plan for the identification, use, and disposition of retained earnings developed pursuant to [48 CFR 970.1504-1-3\(c\)\(6\)](#), if applicable;

(3) The clause entitled “Federally Funded Research and Development Center Sponsoring Agreement,” which, in part, prescribes limitations on the FFRDC competing with the private sector, and requirements for the FFRDC's acceptance of work from a nonsponsor; and

(4) Other terms and conditions considered necessary for the particular circumstances of the FFRDC (*e.g.*, advance understandings on particular cost items).

§970.3501-2 Using an FFRDC

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

The contractor may only accept work from a nonsponsor (as defined in [48 CFR 35.017](#)) in accordance with the requirements of DOE Order 481.1, Work for Others (Non-Department of Energy Funded Work).

§970.3501-3 Reviewing FFRDC's

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) All Department of Energy sponsored FFRDC's are operated by management and operating contractors.

(b) Coincident with the review required by [48 CFR 17.605\(b\)](#) and [48 CFR 970.1702-1\(b\)](#) regarding the decision to extend or compete a management and operating contract, the contracting officer shall, in accordance with internal Departmental procedures:

(1) Conduct the review required by [48 CFR 35.017-4](#) concerning the use and need for the FFRDC; and

(2) Recommend for Secretarial approval, the continuation or termination of the Department's sponsorship of an FFRDC at the time authorization is required to extend or compete a management and operating contract.

§970.3501-4 Contract clause

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36373](#), July 22, 2009.

The contracting officer shall insert the clause at [48 CFR 970.5235-1](#), Federally Funded Research and Development Center Sponsoring Agreement, in all solicitations and contracts for the management and operation of an FFRDC sponsored by the Department of Energy.

Subpart 970-36 - Construction and Architect-Engineer Contracts

§970.3605 Contract clauses

§970.3605-1 Other contracts

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

The clause in [48 CFR 52.236-8](#), Other Contracts, shall be used in all management and operating contracts.

§970.3605-2 Special construction clause for operating contracts

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

The clause in [48 CFR 970.5236-1](#), Government Facility Subcontract Approval, shall be used in management and operating contracts when the contractor will not perform covered work with its own forces but may procure construction by subcontract.

Subpart 970-37 - Facilities Management Contracting

§970.3770 Facilities management

§970.3770-1 Policy

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

Contractors managing DOE facilities shall be required to comply with the DOE Directives applicable

to facilities management.

§970.3770-2 [Reserved]

Subpart 970-41 - Acquisition of Utility Services

§970.4102 Acquiring utility services

§970.4102-1 Policy

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) Utility services defined at [48 CFR 41.101](#) for the furnishing of electricity, gas (natural or manufactured), steam, water, and/or sewerage to facilities owned or leased by DOE shall be acquired directly by DOE and not by a contractor using a subcontractor arrangement, except as provided in paragraph (b) of this subsection.

(b) Where it is determined to be in the best interest of the Government, a DOE contracting activity may authorize a management and operating contractor for a facility to acquire such utility service for the facility, after requesting and receiving concurrence to make such an authorization from the Director, Public Utilities Branch, Headquarters. Any request for such concurrence should be included in the Utility Service Requirements and Options Studies required by DOE directives in subseries 4540 (Public Services). Alternatively, it may be made in a separate document submitted to the Director of that office early in the acquisition cycle. Any request shall set forth why it is in the best interest of the DOE to acquire utility service(s) by subcontract, *i.e.*, what the benefits are, such as economic advantage.

(c) The requirements of [48 CFR part 41](#), this section, and DOE directives in subseries 4540 shall be applied to a subcontract level acquisition for furnishing utility services to a facility owned or leased by DOE.

Subpart 970-42 - Contract Administration

§970.4207-03-02 Certificate of costs

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) The contracting officer shall require that management and operating contractors provide a submission, pursuant to [48 CFR 970.5232-2-\(j\)](#), for settlement of costs incurred during the period stipulated on the submission and a certification that the costs included in the submission are allowable. The contracting officer shall assess a penalty pursuant to [48 CFR 970.5242-1](#) if unallowable costs are included in the submission. Unallowable costs are either expressly unallowable or determined unallowable.

(1) An expressly unallowable cost is a particular item or type of cost which, under the express provisions of an applicable law, regulation, or this contract, is specifically named and stated to be unallowable.

(2) A cost determined unallowable is one which, for that contractor,

(i) Was subject to a contracting officer's final decision and not appealed;

(ii) The Department's Board of Contract Appeals or a court has previously ruled as unallowable; or

(iii) was mutually agreed to be unallowable.

(b) If, during the review of the submission, the contracting officer determines that the submission contains an expressly unallowable cost or a cost determined to be unallowable prior to the submission, the contracting officer shall assess a penalty.

(c) If the contracting officer determines that a cost submitted by the contractor in its submission for settlement is:

(1) Expressly unallowable, then the contracting officer shall assess a penalty in an amount equal to the disallowed cost allocated to the contract plus interest on the paid portion of the disallowed cost. Interest shall be computed from the date of overpayment to the date of repayment using the interest rate specified by the Secretary of the Treasury pursuant to Public Law 92-41 (85 Stat. 97).

(2) Determined unallowable, then the contracting officer shall assess a penalty in an amount equal to two times the amount of the disallowed cost allocated to the contract.

(d) The contracting officer may waive the penalty provisions when:

(1) The contractor withdraws the submission before the formal initiation of an audit of the submission and submits a revised submission;

(2) The amount of the unallowable costs allocated to covered contracts is \$10,000 or less; or

(3) The contractor demonstrates to the contracting officer's satisfaction that:

(i) It has established appropriate policies, personnel training, and an internal control and review system that provides assurances that unallowable costs subject to penalties are precluded from the contractor's submission for settlement of costs; and

(ii) The unallowable costs subject to the penalty were inadvertently incorporated into the submission.

(e) The Head of the Contracting Activity may waive the certification when-

(1) It determines that it would be in the best interest of the United States to waive such certification; and

(2) It states in writing the reasons for that determination and makes such determination available to the public.

§970.4207-03-70 Contract clause

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

The contracting officer shall insert the clause at [48 CFR 970.5242-1](#), Penalties for unallowable costs, in all management and operating solicitations and contracts.

§970.4207-05-01 Contracting officer determination procedure. (DOE coverage-paragraph (b))

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

(b)(4) A contracting officer shall not resolve any questioned costs until the contracting officer has obtained:

(i) Adequate documentation with respect to such costs; and

(ii) The opinion of the Department of Energy's auditor on the allowability of such costs.

(5) The contracting officer shall ensure that the documentation supporting the final settlement addresses the amount of the questioned costs and the subsequent disposition of such questioned costs.

(6) The contracting officer shall ensure, to the maximum extent practicable, that the Department of Energy's auditor is afforded an opportunity to attend any negotiation or meeting with the contractor regarding a determination of allowability.

Subpart 970-43 - Contract Modifications

§970.4302 Changes

§970.4302-1 Contract clause

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

The contracting officer shall insert the clause at [48 CFR 970.5243-1](#), Changes, in all management and operating contracts.

Subpart 970-44 - Management and Operating Contractor Purchasing

§970.4400 Scope

This subpart prescribes policies and procedures concerning the purchasing systems and activities of management and operating contractors.

§970.4401 Responsibilities

§970.4401-1 General

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) In the Department of Energy, overall responsibility for the oversight of the performance of management and operating contractors, including their purchasing activities, rests with the cognizant DOE contracting activity and, in particular, the Head of the Contracting Activity (HCA). Contracting officers are responsible for the management and operating contractors' conformance with this subpart and the applicable terms and conditions of their contracts, and for determining whether those purchasing activities provide timely and effective support to DOE programs.

(b) In carrying out their overall responsibilities, HCAs shall:

(1) Require management and operating contractors to maintain written descriptions of their individual purchasing systems and methods and further require that, upon award or extension of the contract, the entire written description be submitted to the contracting officer for review and acceptance;

(2) Require that any changes to the management and operating contractor's written description having any substantive impact upon the contractor's purchasing system and methods be submitted to the contracting officer for review and acceptance prior to issuance;

(3) Ensure the review of individual purchasing actions of certain types, or above stated dollar levels, by the contracting officer pursuant to 48 CFR subpart 44.2 or as set forth in the contractor's approved system and methods; and

(4) Ensure that periodic appraisals of the contractor's management of all facets of the purchasing function, including compliance with the contractor's approved system and methods, are performed by the contracting officer. Such appraisals shall be performed through either of the following methodologies:

(i) Contractor Purchasing System Reviews, conducted in accordance with 48 CFR subpart 44.3; or

(ii) When approved by the contracting officer, contractor participation in the conduct of the Balanced Scorecard performance measurement and performance management system.

(c) In performing the reviews required by paragraphs (b)(1) and (2), and the appraisals required by paragraph (b)(4) of this subsection, HCAs shall assure that contracting officers determine that the contractors' written systems and methods are consistent with this subpart and the applicable terms and conditions of their contracts.

§970.4401-2 Review and approval

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) The Heads of the Contracting Activities shall establish thresholds, by subcontract type and dollar level, for the review and approval of proposed subcontracting actions by each management and operating contractor under their cognizance. Such thresholds may not exceed the authority delegated to the Head of the Contracting Activity by the Senior Procurement Executive. In establishing these thresholds, the Heads of the Contracting Activities should consider such factors as the following:

(1) The nature of work to be performed under the management and operating contract;

(2) The size, experience, ability, reliability, and organization of the management and operating contractor's purchasing function;

(3) The internal controls, procedures, and organizational stature of the management and operating contractor's purchasing function; and

(4) Policies with respect to such reviews and approvals established by the Senior Procurement

Executive.

(b) Prior approval shall be required for the subcontracting of any work a contractor is obligated to perform under a contract entered into under section 41, entitled Production of Special Nuclear Material, of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended.

(c) The Heads of the Contracting Activities shall take such action as may be required to insure compliance with the procedure for purchasing from contractor-affiliated sources or the purchase of specific items, or classes of items, which by the terms of the contract may require DOE approval.

(d) The Heads of the Contracting Activities may raise or lower the review and approval thresholds established pursuant to paragraph (a) of this subsection at any time. Such action may be considered upon the periodic review of the contractor's purchasing system, but in any case those adjusted thresholds may not exceed the approval authority delegated to the Head of the Contracting Activity by the Senior Procurement Executive.

(e) DOE approvals of specific proposed purchases pursuant to this subpart shall communicate that such approval does not relieve the management and operating contractor of any obligation under its prime contract with DOE; is given without prejudice to any rights or claims of the Government thereunder; creates no obligation on the part of the Government to the subcontractor, and is not a predetermination of the allowability of costs to be incurred under the subcontract.

(f) Contracting officers shall assure that management and operating contractors establish and maintain subcontract files which contain those documents essential to present an accurate and adequate record of all purchasing transactions.

(g) Contracting officers shall assure that management and operating contractors document purchases in writing, setting forth the information and data used in determining that the purchases are in the best interest of the Government. The scope and detail of this documentation shall be consistent with the nature, dollar value, and complexity of the purchase.

(h) The Heads of the Contracting Activities shall assure that the contracting activity establishes and maintains files of the documents associated with the review and approval of subcontract actions subject to DOE review and approval. Those files shall include, among other necessary documentation, an appraisal of the proposed action by the contracting activity and a copy of the approving or disapproving document forwarded to the management and operating contractor, including a listing of any deficiencies, a listing of any required corrective actions, any suggestions, or other relevant comments.

§970.4401-3 Advance notification

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) Contracting officers shall assure that the written description of the management and operating contractor's purchasing system and methods provides for advance notice to the DOE contracting officer of the proposed award of the following specified types of subcontracts, except as stated in paragraph (b) of this subsection:

(1) Pursuant to section 304(b) of the Federal Property and Administrative Service Act of 1949, as amended ([41 U.S.C. 254\(b\)](#)):

(i) Cost reimbursement-type subcontracts of any award value; and

(ii) Fixed price-type subcontracts which exceed the simplified acquisition threshold, or 5 percent of the total estimated cost of the prime contract.

(2) Purchases from contractor-affiliated sources over a value established by the HCA.

(b) Pursuant to section 602(d)13 of the Act (40 U.S.C. 474(13)) referred to in paragraph (a) of this section, the advance notification requirement for the types of purchases listed in paragraphs (a) (1) and (2) of this subsection shall not apply to subcontracts relating to functions derived from the Atomic Energy Commission.

(c) The advance notice shall contain, at a minimum, a description of work, estimated cost, type of contract or reimbursement provisions, and extent of competition, or justification for a noncompetitive purchase procurement. The contracting officer may at any time request additional information that must be furnished promptly and prior to award of the subcontract.

§970.4402 Contractor purchasing system

§970.4402-1 Policy

(a) DOE contracts for the management and operation of its facilities, the design and production of nuclear weapons, energy research and development, and the performance of other services. These management and operating (M&O) contractors have been selected for their technical and managerial expertise and are expected to bring to bear these technical and managerial skills to accomplish the significant Federal mission(s) described in their contracts with, and work plans approved by, DOE.

(b) Purchasing done by management and operating contractors is one area in which the particular skills of the contractors will be brought to bear in order to more readily accomplish the contractors' assigned missions. The contracting procedures of the contractor's organization, therefore, form the basis for the development of a purchasing system and methods that will comply with its contract with DOE and this subpart.

§970.4402-2 General requirements

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

The following shall apply to the purchasing systems of management and operating contractors:

(a) The objective of a management and operating contractor's purchasing system is to deliver to its

customers on a timely basis those best value products and services necessary to accomplish the purposes of the Government's contract. To achieve this objective, contractors are expected to use their experience, expertise and initiative consistent with this subpart.

(b) The purchasing systems and methods used by management and operating contractors shall be well-defined, consistently applied, and shall follow purchasing practices appropriate for the requirement and dollar value of the purchase. It is anticipated that purchasing practices and procedures will vary among contractors and according to the type and kinds of purchases to be made.

(c) Contractor purchases are not Federal procurements, and are not directly subject to the Federal Acquisition Regulations in 48 CFR. Nonetheless, certain Federal laws, Executive Orders, and regulations may affect contractor purchasing, as required by statute, regulation, or contract terms and conditions.

(d) Contractor purchasing systems shall identify and apply the best in commercial purchasing practices and procedures (although nothing precludes the adoption of Federal procurement practices and procedures) to achieve system objectives. Where specific requirements do not otherwise apply, the contractor purchasing system shall provide for appropriate measures to ensure the:

- (1) Acquisition of quality products and services at fair and reasonable prices;
- (2) Use of capable and reliable subcontractors who either:
 - (i) Have track records of successful past performance, or
 - (ii) Can demonstrate a current superior ability to perform;
- (3) Minimization of acquisition lead-time and administrative costs of purchasing;
- (4) Use of effective competitive techniques;
- (5) Reduction of performance risks associated with subcontractors, and facilitation of quality relationships which can include techniques such as partnering agreements, ombudsmen, and alternative disputes procedures;
- (6) Use of self-assessment and benchmarking techniques to support continuous improvement in purchasing;
- (7) Maintenance of the highest professional and ethical standards;
- (8) Maintenance of file documentation appropriate to the value of the purchase and which is adequate to establish the propriety of the transaction and the price paid; and
- (9) Maximization of opportunities for small business, HUBZone small business, small disadvantaged business, and woman-owned small business concerns to participate in contract performance.

§970.4402-3 Purchasing from contractor-affiliated sources

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) A management and operating contractor may purchase from sources affiliated with the contractor (any division, subsidiary, or affiliate of the contractor or its parent company) in the same manner as from other sources, provided:

- (1) The management and operating contractor's purchasing function is independent of the proposed contractor-affiliated source;
- (2) The same terms and conditions would apply if the purchase were from a third party;
- (3) Award is made in accordance with policies and procedures designed to permit effective competition which have been approved by the contracting officer. (This requirement for competition shall not preclude acquisition of technical services from contractor-affiliated entities where those entities have a special expertise, and the basis therefor is documented.); and
- (4) The award is legally enforceable where the entities are separately incorporated.

(b) Subcontracts for performance of contract work itself (as distinguished from the purchase of supplies and services needed in connection with the performance of work) require DOE authorization and may involve an adjustment of the contractor's fee, if any. If the management and operating contractor seeks authorization to have some part of the contract work performed by a contractor-affiliated source, and that contractor's performance of that work was a factor in the negotiated fee, DOE approval would normally require:

- (1) That the contractor-affiliated source perform such work without fee or profit, or
- (2) An equitable downward adjustment to the management and operating contractor's fee, if any.

(c) Determination on cost of money allowance as prescribed at [48 CFR 31.225-10](#) shall be treated as follows:

- (1) When a purchase from a contractor-affiliated source results from competition and is in accord with provisions and conditions of paragraphs (a)(1) through (a)(4) of this subsection, the contractor-affiliated source may include cost of money as an allowable element of the costs of its goods or services supplied to the contractor; provided:
 - (i) The purchase is based on cost as set forth in [48 CFR 970.3102-3-21](#) and
 - (ii) The cost of money amount is computed in accordance with [48 CFR 31.205-10](#) and related procedures (see [48 CFR 970.30](#)).
- (2) When a purchase from a contractor-affiliated source is made non-competitively, cost of money shall not be considered an allowable element of the cost of the contractor-affiliated source purchase.

§970.4402-4 Nuclear material transfers

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) Management and operating contractors, in preparing subcontracts or other agreements in which monetary payments or credits depend on the quantity and quality of nuclear material, shall be required to assure that each such subcontract or agreement contains a:

- (1) Description of the material to be transferred;
- (2) Provision specifying the method by which the quantities are to be measured and reported;
- (3) Provision specifying the procedures to be used in resolving any differences arising as a result of such measurements;
- (4) Provision for the use of an independent third party as an umpire to settle unresolved differences in the analytical samples; and
- (5) Provision specifying in detail which party shall bear the costs of resolving a difference and what constitutes such costs.

(b) The provisions providing for resolution of measurement differences must be such that resolution is always accomplished, while at the same time minimizing any advantage one party may have over the other.

§970.4403 Contract clause

The contracting officer shall insert the clause at 970.5244-1, Contractor Purchasing System, in all management and operating contracts.

Subpart 970-45 - Government Property

§970.4501 General

§970.4501-1 Contract clause

(a) The contracting officer shall insert the clause at 970.5245-1, Property, in management and operating contracts. Paragraph (f)(1)(i)(c) of the clause applies to a non-profit contractor only to the

extent specifically provided in the individual contract. Specific managerial personnel may be listed in paragraph (j), provided their listing is consistent with the clause and the DEAR.

(b) The contracting officer shall insert the basic clause with its Alternate I in contracts with nonprofit contractors.

Subpart 970-49 - Termination of Contracts

§970.4905 Contract termination clause

§970.4905-1 Termination for convenience of the government and default

(a) The contracting officer shall include the clause at [48 CFR 52.249-6](#), Termination (Cost Reimbursement), as modified pursuant to paragraph (b) of this subsection, in all cost-reimbursement management and operating contracts, regardless of whether the contract is for production, or research and development with an educational or nonprofit institution.

(b) The contracting officer shall modify paragraph (i) of the clause to insert “as supplemented in subpart 970.31 of the Department of Energy Acquisition Regulation,” after the phrase, “part 31 of the Federal Acquisition Regulation.”

Subpart 970-50 - Extraordinary Contractual Actions

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

§970.5004 Residual powers

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

§970.5004-1 Contract clause

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

When use of the clause at [48 CFR 52.250-1](#), Indemnification Under Public Law 85-804, is appropriate, the contracting officer may substitute the words “Obligation of funds” for the words “Limitation of Cost or Limitation of Funds.”

§970.5070 Indemnification

§970.5070-1 Scope and applicability

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) Section 170d. of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, requires DOE to enter into agreements of indemnity with contractors whose work involves the risk of public liability for the occurrence of a nuclear incident or precautionary evacuation.

(b) Details of such indemnification are discussed at [48 CFR 950.70](#).

§970.5070-2 General

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

DOE contractors with whom statutory nuclear hazards indemnity agreements under the authority of section 170d. of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, are executed will not normally be required or permitted to furnish financial protection by purchase of insurance to cover public liability for nuclear incidents. However, if authorized by the DOE Headquarters office having responsibility for contractor casualty insurance programs, DOE contractors may be

(a) Permitted to furnish financial protection to themselves, or

(b) Permitted to continue to carry such insurance at cost to the Government if they currently maintain insurance for such liability.

§970.5070-3 Contract clauses

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) The clause at [48 CFR 952.250-70](#), Nuclear Hazards Indemnity Agreement, shall be included in all management and operating contracts involving the risk of public liability for the occurrence of a

nuclear incident or precautionary evacuation arising out of or in connection with the contract work, including such events caused by a product delivered to a DOE-owned, facility for use by DOE or its contractors. The clause at [48 CFR 952.250-70](#) also shall be included in any management and operating contract for the design of a DOE facility, the construction or operation of which may involve the risk of public liability for a nuclear incident or a precautionary evacuation.

(b) The clause at [48 CFR 952.250-70](#) shall not be included in contracts in which the contractor is subject to Nuclear Regulatory Commission (NRC) financial protection requirements under section 170b. of the Act or NRC agreements of indemnification under section 170 c. or k. of the Act for activities to be performed under the contract.

Subpart 970-52 - Solicitation Provisions and Contract Clauses for Management and Operating Contracts

§970.5200 Scope of subpart

This subpart prescribes some of the solicitation provisions and contract clauses for use in management and operating contracts. The provisions and clauses contained in this subpart supplement the provisions and clauses prescribed in the FAR and in other parts of the DEAR ([48 CFR 901](#) through [48 CFR 952](#)), and, pursuant to the individual provision or clause prescription, are to be used in addition to or in place of such clauses. Management and operating contracts are hybrid contracts, in some cases including aspects of several FAR contract types, for example, supplies and construction. For some FAR solicitation provisions and contract clauses, this subpart prescribes their use despite the hybrid nature of the work required. To assist Departmental contracting personnel in determining the applicability of FAR and DEAR clauses to management and operating contracts, additional guidance is published and made available by the Office of Procurement and Assistance Policy, within the Headquarters procurement organization.

§970.5201 Text of provisions and clauses

§970.5203-1 Management controls

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.0370-2\(a\)](#) and [48 CFR 970.3270\(a\)\(4\)](#), insert the following clause:

Management Controls (JUN 2007)

(a)

(1) The contractor shall be responsible for maintaining, as an integral part of its organization, effective systems of management controls for both administrative and programmatic functions. Management controls comprise the plan of organization, methods, and procedures adopted by management to reasonably ensure that: the mission and functions assigned to the contractor are properly executed; efficient and effective operations are promoted including consideration of outsourcing of functions; resources are safeguarded against waste, loss, mismanagement, unauthorized use, or misappropriation; all encumbrances and costs that are incurred under the contract and fees that are earned are in compliance with applicable clauses and other current terms, conditions, and intended purposes; all collections accruing to the contractor in connection with the work under this contract, expenditures, and all other transactions and assets are properly recorded, managed, and reported; and financial, statistical, and other reports necessary to maintain accountability and managerial control are accurate, reliable, and timely.

(2) The systems of controls employed by the contractor shall be documented and satisfactory to DOE.

(3) Such systems shall be an integral part of the contractor's management functions, including defining specific roles and responsibilities for each level of management, and holding employees accountable for the adequacy of the management systems and controls in their areas of assigned responsibility.

(4) The contractor shall, as part of the internal audit program required elsewhere in this contract, periodically review the management systems and controls employed in programs and administrative areas to ensure that they are adequate to provide reasonable assurance that the objectives of the systems are being accomplished and that these systems and controls are working effectively. Annually, or at other intervals directed by the contracting officer, the contractor shall supply to the contracting officer copies of the reports reflecting the status of recommendations resulting from management audits performed by its internal audit activity and any other audit organization. This requirement may be satisfied in part by the reports required under paragraph (i) of 970.5232-3, Accounts, records, and inspection.

(b) The contractor shall be responsible for maintaining, as a part of its operational responsibilities, a baseline quality assurance program that implements documented performance, quality standards, and control and assessment techniques.

(End of clause)

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [71 FR 16243](#), Mar. 31, 2006; [72 FR 29081](#), May 24, 2007; [72 FR 39761](#), July 20, 2007]

§970.5203-2 Performance improvement and collaboration

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.0370-2\(b\)](#), insert the following clause:

Performance Improvement and Collaboration (MAY 2006)

(a) The contractor agrees that it shall affirmatively identify, evaluate, and institute practices, where appropriate, that will improve performance in the areas of environmental and health, safety, scientific and technical, security, business and administrative, and any other areas of performance in the management and operation of the contract. This may entail the alteration of existing practices or the institution of new procedures to more effectively or efficiently perform any aspect of contract performance or reduce overall cost of operation under the contract. Such improvements may result from changes in organization, outsourcing decisions, simplification of systems while retaining necessary controls, or any other approaches consistent with the statement of work and performance measures of this contract.

(b) The contractor agrees to work collaboratively with the Department, all other management and operating, DOE major facilities management contractors and affiliated contractors which manage or operate DOE sites or facilities for the following purposes: (i) to exchange information generally, (ii) to evaluate concepts that may be of benefit in resolving common issues, in confronting common problems, or in reducing costs of operations, and (iii) to otherwise identify and implement DOE-complex-wide management improvements discussed in paragraph (a). In doing so, it shall also affirmatively provide information relating to its management improvements to such contractors, including lessons learned, subject to security considerations and the protection of data proprietary to third parties.

(c) The contractor may consult with the contracting officer in those instances in which improvements being considered pursuant to paragraph (a) involve the cooperation of the DOE. The contractor may request the assistance of the contracting officer in the communication of the success of improvements to other management and operating contractors in accordance with paragraph (b) of this clause.

(d) The contractor shall notify the contracting officer and seek approval where necessary to fulfill its obligations under the contract. Compliance with this clause in no way alters the obligations of the Contractor under any other provision of this contract.

(End of clause)

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [71 FR 16243](#), Mar. 31, 2006]

§970.5203-3 Contractor's organization

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.0371-9](#), insert the following clause:

Contractor's Organization (DEC 2000)

(a) *Organization chart.* As promptly as possible after the execution of this contract, the contractor shall furnish to the contracting officer a chart showing the names, duties, and organization of key personnel (see [48 CFR 952.215-70](#)) to be employed in connection with the work, and shall furnish supplemental information to reflect any changes as they occur.

(b) *Supervisory representative of contractor.* Unless otherwise directed by the contracting officer, a competent full-time resident supervisory representative of the contractor satisfactory to the contracting officer shall be in charge of the work at the site, and any work off-site, at all times.

(c) *Control of employees.* The contractor shall be responsible for maintaining satisfactory standards of employee competency, conduct, and integrity and shall be responsible for taking such disciplinary action with respect to its employees as may be necessary. In the event the contractor fails to remove any employee from the contract work whom

DOE deems incompetent, careless, or insubordinate, or whose continued employment on the work is deemed by DOE to be inimical to the Department's mission, the contracting officer may require, with the approval of the Secretary of Energy, the contractor to remove the employee from work under the contract. This includes the right to direct the contractor to remove its most senior key person from work under the contract for serious contract performance deficiencies.

(d) *Standards and procedures.* The contractor shall establish such standards and procedures as are necessary to implement the requirements set forth in [48 CFR 970.0371](#). Such standards and procedures shall be subject to the approval of the contracting officer.

(End of clause)

§970.5204-1 Counterintelligence

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

(a) As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.0404-4\(a\)](#), insert the following clause in contracts containing the clauses at [48 CFR 952.204-2](#), Security, and [48 CFR 952.204-70](#), Classification/Declassification:

Counterintelligence (DEC 2000)

(a) The contractor shall take all reasonable precautions in the work under this contract to protect DOE programs, facilities, technology, personnel, unclassified sensitive information and classified matter from foreign intelligence threats and activities conducted for governmental or industrial purposes, in accordance with DOE Order 5670.3, Counterintelligence Program; Executive Order 12333, U.S. Intelligence Activities; and other pertinent national and Departmental Counterintelligence requirements.

(b) The contractor shall appoint a qualified employee(s) to function as the Contractor Counterintelligence Officer. The Contractor Counterintelligence Officer will be responsible for conducting defensive Counterintelligence briefings and debriefings of employees traveling to foreign countries or interacting with foreign nationals; providing thoroughly documented written reports relative to targeting, suspicious activity and other matters of Counterintelligence interest; immediately reporting targeting, suspicious activity and other Counterintelligence concerns to the DOE Headquarters Counterintelligence Division; and providing assistance to other elements of the U.S. Intelligence Community as stated in the aforementioned Executive Order, the DOE Counterintelligence Order, and other pertinent national and Departmental Counterintelligence requirements.

(End of clause)

§970.5204-2 Laws, regulations, and DOE directives

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.0470-2](#), insert the following clause:

Laws, Regulations, and DOE Directives (DEC 2000)

(a) In performing work under this contract, the contractor shall comply with the requirements of applicable Federal, State, and local laws and regulations (including DOE regulations), unless relief has been granted in writing by the appropriate regulatory agency. A List of Applicable Laws and regulations (List A) may be appended to this contract for information purposes. Omission of any applicable law or regulation from List A does not affect the obligation of the contractor to comply with such law or regulation pursuant to this paragraph.

(b) In performing work under this contract, the contractor shall comply with the requirements of those Department of Energy directives, or parts thereof, identified in the List of Applicable Directives (List B) appended to this contract. Except as otherwise provided for in paragraph (d) of this clause, the contracting officer may, from time to time and at any time, revise List B by unilateral modification to the contract to add, modify, or delete specific requirements. Prior to revising List B, the contracting officer shall notify the contractor in writing of the Department's intent to revise List B and provide the contractor with the opportunity to assess the effect of the contractor's compliance with the revised list on contract cost and funding, technical performance, and schedule; and identify any potential inconsistencies between the revised list and the other terms and conditions of the contract. Within 30 days after receipt of the contracting officer's notice, the contractor shall advise the contracting officer in writing of the potential impact of the contractor's compliance with the revised list. Based on the information provided by the contractor and any other information available, the contracting officer shall decide whether to revise List B and so advise the contractor not later than 30 days prior to the effective date of the revision of List B. The contractor and the contracting officer shall identify and, if appropriate, agree to any changes to other contract terms and conditions, including cost and schedule, associated with the revision of List B pursuant to the clause of this contract entitled, "Changes."

(c) Environmental, safety, and health (ES&H) requirements appropriate for work conducted under this contract may be determined by a DOE approved process to evaluate the work and the associated hazards and identify an appropriately tailored set of standards, practices, and controls, such as a tailoring process included in a DOE approved Safety Management System implemented under the clause entitled "Integration of Environment, Safety, and Health into Work Planning and Execution." When such a process is used, the set of tailored (ES&H) requirements, as approved by DOE pursuant to the process, shall be incorporated into List B as contract requirements with full force and effect. These requirements shall supersede, in whole or in part, the contractual environmental, safety, and health requirements previously made applicable to the contract by List B. If the tailored set of requirements identifies an alternative requirement varying from an ES&H requirement of an applicable law or regulation, the contractor shall request an exemption or other appropriate regulatory relief specified in the regulation.

(d) Except as otherwise directed by the contracting officer, the contractor shall procure all necessary permits or licenses required for the performance of work under this contract.

(e) Regardless of the performer of the work, the contractor is responsible for compliance with the requirements of this clause. The contractor is responsible for flowing down the requirements of this clause to subcontracts at any tier to the extent necessary to ensure the contractor's compliance with the requirements.

(End of clause)

§970.5204-3 Access to and ownership of records

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.0407-1-3](#), insert the following clause:

Access to and Ownership of Records (DEC 2000)

(a) *Government-owned records.* Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this clause, all records acquired or generated by the contractor in its performance of this contract shall be the property of the Government and shall be delivered to the Government or otherwise disposed of by the contractor either as the contracting officer may from time to time direct during the progress of the work or, in any event, as the contracting officer shall direct upon completion or termination of the contract.

(b) *Contractor-owned records.* The following records are considered the property of the contractor and are not within the scope of paragraph (a) of this clause. [The contracting officer shall identify which of the following categories of records will be included in the clause.]

(1) Employment-related records (such as worker's compensation files; employee relations records, records on salary and employee benefits; drug testing records, labor negotiation records; records on ethics, employee concerns; records generated during the course of responding to allegations of research misconduct; records generated during other employee related investigations conducted under an expectation of confidentiality; employee assistance program records; and personnel and medical/health-related records and similar files), and non-employee patient medical/health-related records, except for those records described by the contract as being maintained in Privacy Act systems of records.

(2) Confidential contractor financial information, and correspondence between the contractor and other segments of the contractor located away from the DOE facility (i.e., the contractor's corporate headquarters);

(3) Records relating to any procurement action by the contractor, except for records that under [48 CFR 970.5232-3](#), Accounts, Records, and Inspection, are described as the property of the Government; and

(4) Legal records, including legal opinions, litigation files, and documents covered by the attorney-client and attorney work product privileges; and

(5) The following categories of records maintained pursuant to the technology transfer clause of this contract:

(i) Executed license agreements, including exhibits or appendices containing information on royalties, royalty rates, other financial information, or commercialization plans, and all related documents, notes and correspondence.

(ii) The contractor's protected Cooperative Research and Development Agreement (CRADA) information and appendices to a CRADA that contain licensing terms and conditions, or royalty or royalty rate information.

(iii) Patent, copyright, mask work, and trademark application files and related contractor invention disclosures, documents and correspondence, where the contractor has elected rights or has permission to assert rights and has not relinquished such rights or turned such rights over to the Government.

(c) *Contract completion or termination.* In the event of completion or termination of this contract, copies of any of the contractor-owned records identified in paragraph (b) of this clause, upon the request of the Government, shall be delivered to DOE or its designees, including successor contractors. Upon delivery, title to such records shall vest in DOE or its designees, and such records shall be protected in accordance with applicable federal laws (including the Privacy Act), as appropriate.

(d) *Inspection, copying, and audit of records.* All records acquired or generated by the contractor under this contract in the possession of the contractor, including those described at paragraph (b) of this clause, shall be subject to inspection, copying, and audit by the Government or its designees at all reasonable times, and the contractor shall afford the Government or its designees reasonable facilities for such inspection, copying, and audit; provided, however, that upon request by the contracting officer, the contractor shall deliver such records to a location specified by the contracting officer for inspection, copying, and audit. The Government or its designees shall use such records in accordance with applicable

federal laws (including the Privacy Act), as appropriate.

(e) *Applicability*. Paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of this clause apply to all records without regard to the date or origination of such records.

(f) *Records retention standards*. Special records retention standards, described at DOE Order 200.1, Information Management Program (version in effect on effective date of contract), are applicable for the classes of records described therein, whether or not the records are owned by the Government or the contractor. In addition, the contractor shall retain individual radiation exposure records generated in the performance of work under this contract until DOE authorizes disposal. The Government may waive application of these record retention schedules, if, upon termination or completion of the contract, the Government exercises its right under paragraph (c) of this clause to obtain copies and delivery of records described in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this clause.

(g) *Subcontracts*. The contractor shall include the requirements of this clause in all subcontracts that are of a cost-reimbursement type if any of the following factors is present:

- (1) The value of the subcontract is greater than \$2 million (unless specifically waived by the contracting officer);
- (2) The contracting officer determines that the subcontract is, or involves, a critical task related to the contract; or
- (3) The subcontract includes [48 CFR 970.5223-1](#), Integration of Environment, Safety, and Health into Work Planning and Execution, or similar clause.

(End of clause)

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [70 FR 37016](#), June 28, 2005]

§970.5208-1 Printing

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.0808-3](#), insert the following clause:

Printing (DEC 2000)

(a) To the extent that duplicating or printing services may be required in the performance of this contract, the Contractor shall provide or secure such services in accordance with the Government Printing and Binding Regulations, Title 44 of the U.S. Code, and DOE Directives relative thereto.

(b) The term "Printing" includes the following processes: Composition, platemaking, presswork, binding, microform publishing, or the end items produced by such processes. Provided, however, that performance of a requirement under this contract involving the duplication of less than 5,000 copies of a single page, or no more than 25,000 units in the aggregate of multiple pages, will not be deemed to be printing.

(c) Printing services not obtained in compliance with this guidance shall result in the cost of such printing being disallowed.

(d) The Contractor shall include the substance of this clause in all subcontracts hereunder which require printing (as that term is defined in Title I of the U.S. Government Printing and Binding Regulations).

(End of clause)

§970.5209-1 Requirement for guarantee of performance

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.0970-2](#), the contracting officer shall insert the following provision in solicitations for management and operating contracts:

Requirement for Guarantee of Performance (DEC 2000)

The successful offeror is required by other provisions of this solicitation to organize a dedicated corporate entity to carry out the work under the contract to be awarded as a result of this solicitation. The successful offeror will be required, as part of the determination of responsibility of the newly organized, dedicated corporate entity and as a condition of the award of the contract to that entity, to furnish a guarantee of that entity's performance. That guarantee of performance must be satisfactory in all respects to the Department of Energy.

(End of clause)

§970.5211-1 Work authorization

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [970.1170-2](#), insert the following clause:

Work Authorization (MAY 2007)

(a) *Work authorization proposal.* Prior to the start of each fiscal year, the Contracting Officer or designee shall provide the contractor with program execution guidance in sufficient detail to enable the contractor to develop an estimated cost, scope, and schedule. In addition, the Contracting Officer may unilaterally assign work. The contractor shall submit to the Contracting Officer or other designated official, a detailed description of work, a budget of estimated costs, and a schedule of performance for the work it recommends be undertaken during that upcoming fiscal year.

(b) *Cost estimates.* The contractor and the Contracting Officer shall establish a budget of estimated costs, description of work, and schedule of performance for each work assignment. If agreement cannot be reached as to scope, schedule, and estimated cost, the Contracting Officer may issue a unilateral work authorization, pursuant to this clause. The work authorization, whether issued bilaterally or unilaterally shall become part of the contract. No activities shall be authorized or costs incurred prior to Contracting Officer issuance of a work authorization or direction concerning continuation of activities of the contract.

(c) *Performance.* The contractor shall perform work as specified in the work authorization, consistent with the terms and conditions of this contract.

(d) *Modification.* The Contracting Officer may at any time, without notice, issue changes to work authorizations within the overall scope of the contract. A proposal for adjustment in estimated costs and schedule for performance of work, recognizing work made unnecessary as a result, along with new work, shall be submitted by the contractor in accordance with paragraph (a) of this clause. Resolution shall be in accordance with paragraph (b) of this clause.

(e) *Increase in estimated cost.* The contractor shall notify the Contracting Officer immediately whenever the cost incurred, plus the projected cost to complete work is projected to differ (plus or minus) from the estimate by 10 percent. The contractor shall submit a proposal for modification in accordance with paragraph (a) of this clause. Resolution shall be in

accordance with paragraph (b) of this clause.

(f) *Expenditure of funds and incurrence of costs.* The expenditure of monies by the contractor in the performance of all authorized work shall be governed by the “Obligation of Funds” or equivalent clause of the contract.

(g) *Responsibility to achieve environment, safety, health, and security compliance.* Notwithstanding other provisions of the contract, the contractor may, in the event of an emergency, take that corrective action necessary to sustain operations consistent with applicable environmental, safety, health, and security statutes, regulations, and procedures. If such action is taken, the contractor shall notify the Contracting Officer within 24 hours of initiation and, within 30 days, submit a proposal for adjustment in estimated costs and schedule established in accordance with paragraphs (a) and (b) of this clause.

(End of clause)

[72 FR 29434, May 29, 2007]

§970.5215-1 Total available fee: Base fee amount and performance fee amount

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36374](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.1504-5\(a\)](#), insert the following clause. The clause should be tailored to reflect the contract's actual inclusion of base fee amount and performance fee amount.

Total Available Fee: Base Fee Amount and Performance Fee Amount (DEC 2000)

(a) *Total available fee.* Total available fee, consisting of a base fee amount (which may be zero) and a performance fee amount (consisting of an incentive fee component for objective performance requirements, an award fee component for subjective performance requirements, or both) determined in accordance with the provisions of this clause, is available for payment in accordance with the clause of this contract entitled, “Payments and advances.”

(b) *Fee negotiations.* Prior to the beginning of each fiscal year under this contract, or other appropriate period as mutually agreed upon and, if exceeding one year, approved by the Senior Procurement Executive, or designee, the contracting officer and Contractor shall enter into negotiation of the requirements for the year or appropriate period, including the evaluation areas and individual requirements subject to incentives, the total available fee, and the allocation of fee. The contracting officer shall modify this contract at the conclusion of each negotiation to reflect the negotiated requirements, evaluation areas and individual requirements subject to incentives, the total available fee, and the allocation of fee. In the event the parties fail to agree on the requirements, the evaluation areas and individual requirements subject to incentives, the total available fee, or the allocation of fee, a unilateral determination will be made by the contracting officer. The total available fee amount shall be allocated to a twelve month cycle composed of one or more evaluation periods, or such longer period as may be mutually agreed to between the parties and approved by the Senior Procurement Executive, or designee.

(c) *Determination of total available fee amount earned.*

(1) The Government shall, at the conclusion of each specified evaluation period, evaluate the contractor's performance of all requirements, including performance based incentives completed during the period, and determine the total available fee amount earned. At the contracting officer's discretion, evaluation of incentivized performance may occur at the scheduled completion of specific incentivized requirements.

(2) The DOE Operations/Field Office Manager, or designee, will be (insert title of DOE Operations/Field Office Manager, or designee). The contractor agrees that the determination as to the total available fee earned is a unilateral determination made by the DOE Operations/Field Office Manager, or designee.

(3) The evaluation of contractor performance shall be in accordance with the Performance Evaluation and Measurement Plan(s) described in subparagraph (d) of this clause unless otherwise set forth in the contract. The Contractor shall be promptly advised in writing of the fee determination, and the basis of the fee determination. In the event that the contractor's performance is considered to be less than the level of performance set forth in the Statement of Work, as amended to include the current Work Authorization Directive or similar document, for any contract requirement, it will be considered by the DOE Operations/Field Office Manager, or designee, who may at his/her discretion adjust the fee determination to reflect such performance. Any such adjustment shall be in accordance with the clause entitled, "Conditional Payment of Fee, Profit, and Other Incentives-Facility Management Contracts" if contained in the contract.

(d) *Performance evaluation and measurement plan(s)*. To the extent not set forth elsewhere in the contract:

(1) The Government shall establish a Performance Evaluation and Measurement Plan(s) upon which the determination of the total available fee amount earned shall be based. The Performance Evaluation and Measurement Plan(s) will address all of the requirements of contract performance specified in the contract directly or by reference. A copy of the Performance Evaluation and Measurement Plan(s) shall be provided to the Contractor:

(i) prior to the start of an evaluation period if the requirements, evaluation areas, specific incentives, amount of fee, and allocation of fee to such evaluation areas and specific incentives have been mutually agreed to by the parties; or

(ii) not later than thirty days prior to the scheduled start date of the evaluation period, if the requirements, evaluation areas, specific incentives, amount of fee, and allocation of fee to such evaluation areas and specific incentives have been unilaterally established by the contracting officer.

(2) The Performance Evaluation and Measurement Plan(s) will set forth the criteria upon which the Contractor will be evaluated relating to any technical, schedule, management, and/or cost objectives selected for evaluation. Such criteria should be objective, but may also include subjective criteria. The Plan(s) shall also set forth the method by which the total available fee amount will be allocated and the amount earned determined.

(3) The Performance Evaluation and Measurement Plan(s) may, consistent with the contract statement of work, be revised during the period of performance. The contracting officer shall notify the contractor:

(i) of such unilateral changes at least ninety calendar days prior to the end of the affected evaluation period and at least thirty calendar days prior to the effective date of the change;

(ii) of such bilateral changes at least sixty calendar days prior to the end of the affected evaluation period; or

(iii) if such change, whether unilateral or bilateral, is urgent and high priority, at least thirty calendar days prior to the end of the evaluation period.

(e) *Schedule for total available fee amount earned determinations*. The DOE Operations/Field Office Manager, or designee, shall issue the final total available fee amount earned determination in accordance with: the schedule set forth in the Performance Evaluation and Measurement Plan(s); or as otherwise set forth in this contract. However, a determination must be made within sixty calendar days after the receipt by the contracting officer of the Contractor's self-assessment, if one is required or permitted by paragraph (f) of this clause, or seventy calendar days after the end of the evaluation period, whichever is later, or a longer period if the Contractor and contracting officer agree. If the contracting officer evaluates the Contractor's performance of specific requirements on their completion, the payment of any earned fee amount must be made within seventy calendar days (or such other time period as mutually agreed to between the contracting officer and the Contractor) after such completion. If the determination is delayed beyond that date, the Contractor shall be entitled to interest on the determined total available fee amount earned at the rate established by the Secretary of the Treasury under section 12 of the Contract Disputes Act of 1978 (41 U.S.C. 611) that is in effect on the payment date. This rate is referred to as the "Renegotiation Board Interest Rate," and is published in the Federal Register semiannually on or about January 1

and July 1. The interest on any late total available fee amount earned determination will accrue daily and be compounded in 30-day increments inclusive from the first day after the schedule determination date through the actual date the determination is issued. That is, interest accrued at the end of any 30-day period will be added to the determined amount of fee earned and be subject to interest if not paid in the succeeding 30-day period.

(End of clause)

Alternate I (DEC 2000). As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.1504-5\(a\)\(1\)](#), when the award fee cycle consists of two or more evaluation periods, add the following to paragraph (c):

(4) At the sole discretion of the Government, unearned total available fee amounts may be carried over from one evaluation period to the next, so long as the periods are within the same award fee cycle.

Alternate II (DEC 2000). As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.1504-5\(a\)\(2\)](#), when the award fee cycle consists of one evaluation period, add the following to paragraph (c):

(4) Award fee not earned during the evaluation period shall not be allocated to future evaluation periods.

Alternate III (DEC 2000). As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.1504-5\(a\)\(3\)](#), when the DOE Operations/Field Office Manager, or designee, requires the contractor to submit a self-assessment, add the following as paragraph (f):

(f) *Contractor self-assessment.* Following each evaluation period, the Contractor shall submit a self-assessment within (*Insert Number*) calendar days after the end of the period. This self-assessment shall address both the strengths and weaknesses of the Contractor's performance during the evaluation period. Where deficiencies in performance are noted, the Contractor shall describe the actions planned or taken to correct such deficiencies and avoid their recurrence. The DOE Operations/Field Office Manager, or designee, will review the Contractor's self-assessment, if submitted, as part of its independent evaluation of the contractor's management during the period. A self-assessment, in and of itself may not be the only basis for the award fee determination.

Alternate IV (DEC 2000). As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.1504-5\(a\)\(4\)](#), when the DOE Operations/Field Office Manager, or designee, permits the contractor to submit a self-assessment at the contractor's option, add the following text as paragraph (f):

(f) *Contractor self-assessment.* Following each evaluation period, the Contractor may submit a self-assessment, provided such assessment is submitted within (*Insert Number*) calendar days after the end of the period. This self-assessment shall address both the strengths and weaknesses of the Contractor's performance during the evaluation period. Where deficiencies in performance are noted, the Contractor shall describe the actions planned or taken to correct such deficiencies and avoid their recurrence. The DOE Operations/Field Office Manager, or designee, will review the Contractor's self-assessment, if submitted, as part of its independent evaluation of the Contractor's management during the period. A self-assessment, in and of itself may not be the only basis for the award fee determination.

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [68 FR 68782](#), Dec. 10, 2003]

§970.5215-2 [Reserved]

§970.5215-3 Conditional payment of fee, profit, and other incentives-facility management contracts

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36375](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.1504-5\(c\)\(1\)](#), insert the following clause:

Conditional Payment of Fee, Profit, and Other Incentives-Facility Management Contracts (JAN 2004)

(a) *General.*

(1) The payment of earned fee, fixed fee, profit, or share of cost savings under this contract is dependent upon:

(i) The contractor's or contractor employees' compliance with the terms and conditions of this contract relating to environment, safety and health (ES&H), which includes worker safety and health (WS&H), including performance under an approved Integrated Safety Management System (ISMS); and

(ii) The contractor's or contractor employees' compliance with the terms and conditions of this contract relating to the safeguarding of Restricted Data and other classified information.

(2) The ES&H performance requirements of this contract are set forth in its ES&H terms and conditions, including the DOE approved contractor ISMS or similar document. Financial incentives for timely mission accomplishment or cost effectiveness shall never compromise or impede full and effective implementation of the ISMS and full ES&H compliance.

(3) The performance requirements of this contract relating to the safeguarding of Restricted Data and other classified information are set forth in the clauses of this contract entitled, "Security" and "Laws, Regulations, and DOE Directives," as well as in other terms and conditions.

(4) If the contractor does not meet the performance requirements of this contract relating to ES&H or to the safeguarding of Restricted Data and other classified information during any performance evaluation period established under the contract pursuant to the clause of this contract entitled, "Total Available Fee: Base Fee Amount and Performance Fee Amount," otherwise earned fee, fixed fee, profit or share of cost savings may be unilaterally reduced by the contracting officer.

(b) *Reduction amount.*

(1) The amount of earned fee, fixed fee, profit, or share of cost savings that may be unilaterally reduced will be determined by the severity of the performance failure pursuant to the degrees specified in paragraphs (c) and (d) of this clause.

(2) If a reduction of earned fee, fixed fee, profit, or share of cost savings is warranted, unless mitigating factors apply, such reduction shall not be less than 26 percent nor greater than 100 percent of the amount of earned fee, fixed fee, profit, or the contractor's share of cost savings for a first degree performance failure, not less than 11 percent nor greater than 25 percent for a second degree performance failure, and up to 10 percent for a third degree performance failure.

(3) In determining the amount of the reduction and the applicability of mitigating factors, the contracting officer must consider the contractor's overall performance in meeting the ES&H or security requirements of the contract. Such consideration must include performance against any site specific performance criteria/requirements that provide additional definition, guidance for the amount of reduction, or guidance for the applicability of mitigating

factors. In all cases, the contracting officer must consider mitigating factors that may warrant a reduction below the applicable range (*see* 48 CFR 970.1504-1-2). The mitigating factors include, but are not limited to, the following ((v), (vi), (vii) and (viii) apply to ES&H only).

- (i) Degree of control the contractor had over the event or incident.
- (ii) Efforts the contractor had made to anticipate and mitigate the possibility of the event in advance.
- (iii) Contractor self-identification and response to the event to mitigate impacts and recurrence.
- (iv) General status (trend and absolute performance) of: ES&H and compliance in related areas; or of safeguarding Restricted Data and other classified information and compliance in related areas.
- (v) Contractor demonstration to the contracting officer's satisfaction that the principles of industrial ES&H standards are routinely practiced (*e.g.*, Voluntary Protection Program, [ISO 14000](#)).
- (vi) Event caused by “Good Samaritan” act by the contractor (*e.g.*, offsite emergency response).
- (vii) Contractor demonstration that a performance measurement system is routinely used to improve and maintain ES&H performance (including effective resource allocation) and to support DOE corporate decision-making (*e.g.*, policy, ES&H programs). * * *
- (viii) Contractor demonstration that an Operating Experience and Feedback Program is functioning that demonstrably affects continuous improvement in ES&H by use of lessons-learned and best practices inter- and intra-DOE sites.

(4)

- (i) The amount of fee, fixed fee, profit, or share of cost savings that is otherwise earned by a contractor during an evaluation period may be reduced in accordance with this clause if it is determined that a performance failure warranting a reduction under this clause occurs within the evaluation period.
- (ii) The amount of reduction under this clause, in combination with any reduction made under any other clause in the contract, shall not exceed the amount of fee, fixed fee, profit, or the contractor's share of cost savings that is otherwise earned during the evaluation period.
- (iii) For the purposes of this clause, earned fee, fixed fee, profit, or share of cost savings for the evaluation period shall mean the amount determined by the contracting officer or fee determination official as otherwise payable based on the contractor's performance during the evaluation period. Where the contract provides for financial incentives that extend beyond a single evaluation period, this amount shall also include: any provisional amounts determined otherwise payable in the evaluation period; and, if provisional payments are not provided for, the allocable amount of any incentive determined otherwise payable at the conclusion of a subsequent evaluation period. The allocable amount shall be the total amount of the earned incentive divided by the number of evaluation periods over which it was earned.
- (iv) The Government will effect the reduction as soon as practicable after the end of the evaluation period in which the performance failure occurs. If the Government is not aware of the failure, it will effect the reduction as soon as practical after becoming aware. For any portion of the reduction requiring an allocation the Government will effect the reduction at the end of the evaluation period in which it determines the total amount earned under the incentive. If at any time a reduction causes the sum of the payments the contractor has received for fee, fixed fee, profit, or share of cost savings to exceed the sum of fee, fixed fee, profit, or share of cost savings the contractor has earned (provisionally or otherwise), the contractor shall immediately return the excess to the Government. (What the contractor “has earned” reflects any reduction made under this or any other clause of the contract.)
- (v) At the end of the contract:

(A) The Government will pay the contractor the amount by which the sum of fee, fixed fee, profit, or share of cost savings the contractor has earned exceeds the sum of the payments the contractor has received; or

(B) The contractor shall return to the Government the amount by which the sum of the payments the contractor has received exceeds the sum of fee, fixed fee, profit, or share of cost savings the contractor has earned. (What the contractor “has earned” reflects any reduction made under this or any other clause of the contract.)

(c) *Environment, Safety and Health (ES&H)*. Performance failures occur if the contractor does not comply with the contract's ES&H terms and conditions, including the DOE approved contractor ISMS. The degrees of performance failure under which reductions of earned or fixed fee, profit, or share of cost savings will be determined are:

(1) *First Degree*: Performance failures that are most adverse to ES&H. Failure to develop and obtain required DOE approval of an ISMS is considered first degree. The Government will perform necessary review of the ISMS in a timely manner and will not unreasonably withhold approval of the contractor's ISMS. The following performance failures or performance failures of similar import will be considered first degree.

(i) Type A accident (defined in DOE Order 225.1A).

(ii) Two Second Degree performance failures during an evaluation period.

(2) *Second Degree*: Performance failures that are significantly adverse to ES&H. They include failures to comply with an approved ISMS that result in an actual injury, exposure, or exceedance that occurred or nearly occurred but had minor practical long-term health consequences. They also include breakdowns of the Safety Management System. The following performance failures or performance failures of similar import will be considered second degree:

(i) Type B accident (defined in DOE Order 225.1A).

(ii) Non-compliance with an approved ISMS that results in a near miss of a Type A or B accident. A near miss is a situation in which an inappropriate action occurs, or a necessary action is omitted, but does not result in an adverse effect.

(iii) Failure to mitigate or notify DOE of an imminent danger situation after discovery, where such notification is a requirement of the contract.

(3) *Third Degree*: Performance failures that reflect a lack of focus on improving ES&H. They include failures to comply with an approved ISMS that result in potential breakdown of the System. The following performance failures or performance failures of similar import will be considered third degree:

(i) Failure to implement effective corrective actions to address deficiencies/non-compliances documented through: external (*e.g.*, Federal) oversight and/or reported per DOE Order 232.1A requirements; or internal oversight of DOE Order 440.1A requirements.

(ii) Multiple similar non-compliances identified by external (*e.g.*, Federal) oversight that in aggregate indicate a significant programmatic breakdown.

(iii) Non-compliances that either have, or may have, significant negative impacts to the worker, the public, or the environment or that indicate a significant programmatic breakdown.

(iv) Failure to notify DOE upon discovery of events or conditions where notification is required by the terms and conditions of the contract.

(d) *Safeguarding restricted data and other classified information*. Performance failures occur if the contractor does not comply with the terms and conditions of this contract relating to the safeguarding of Restricted Data and other classified information. The degrees of performance failure under which reductions of fee, profit, or share of cost savings will be

determined are as follows:

(1) *First Degree*: Performance failures that have been determined, in accordance with applicable law, DOE regulation, or directive, to have resulted in, or that can reasonably be expected to result in, exceptionally grave damage to the national security. The following are examples of performance failures or performance failures of similar import that will be considered first degree:

- (i) Non-compliance with applicable laws, regulations, and DOE directives actually resulting in, or creating a risk of, loss, compromise, or unauthorized disclosure of Top Secret Restricted Data or other information classified as Top Secret, any classification level of information in a Special Access Program (SAP), information identified as sensitive compartmented information (SCI), or high risk nuclear weapons-related data.
- (ii) Contractor actions that result in a breakdown of the safeguards and security management system that can reasonably be expected to result in the loss, compromise, or unauthorized disclosure of Top Secret Restricted Data, or other information classified as Top Secret, any classification level of information in a SAP, information identified as SCI, or high risk nuclear weapons-related data.
- (iii) Failure to promptly report the loss, compromise, or unauthorized disclosure of Top Secret Restricted Data, or other information classified as Top Secret, any classification level of information in a SAP, information identified as SCI, or high risk nuclear weapons-related data.
- (iv) Failure to timely implement corrective actions stemming from the loss, compromise, or unauthorized disclosure of Top Secret Restricted Data or other information classified as Top Secret, any classification level of information in a SAP, information identified as SCI, or high risk nuclear weapons-related data.

(2) *Second Degree*: Performance failures that have been determined, in accordance with applicable law, DOE regulation, or directive, to have actually resulted in, or that can reasonably be expected to result in, serious damage to the national security. The following are examples of performance failures or performance failures of similar import that will be considered second degree:

- (i) Non-compliance with applicable laws, regulations, and DOE directives actually resulting in, or creating risk of, loss, compromise, or unauthorized disclosure of Secret Restricted Data or other information classified as Secret.
- (ii) Contractor actions that result in a breakdown of the safeguards and security management system that can reasonably be expected to result in the loss, compromise, or unauthorized disclosure of Secret Restricted Data, or other information classified as Secret.
- (iii) Failure to promptly report the loss, compromise, or unauthorized disclosure of Restricted Data or other classified information regardless of classification (except for information covered by paragraph (d)(1)(iii) of this clause).
- (iv) Failure to timely implement corrective actions stemming from the loss, compromise, or unauthorized disclosure of Secret Restricted Data or other classified information classified as Secret.

(3) *Third Degree*: Performance failures that have been determined, in accordance with applicable law, regulation, or DOE directive, to have actually resulted in, or that can reasonably be expected to result in, undue risk to the common defense and security. In addition, this category includes performance failures that result from a lack of contractor management and/or employee attention to the proper safeguarding of Restricted Data and other classified information. These performance failures may be indicators of future, more severe performance failures and/or conditions, and if identified and corrected early would prevent serious incidents. The following are examples of performance failures or performance failures of similar import that will be considered third degree:

- (i) Non-compliance with applicable laws, regulations, and DOE directives actually resulting in, or creating risk of, loss, compromise, or unauthorized disclosure of Restricted Data or other information classified as Confidential.

(ii) Failure to promptly report alleged or suspected violations of laws, regulations, or directives pertaining to the safeguarding of Restricted Data or other classified information.

(iii) Failure to identify or timely execute corrective actions to mitigate or eliminate identified vulnerabilities and reduce residual risk relating to the protection of Restricted Data or other classified information in accordance with the contractor's Safeguards and Security Plan or other security plan, as applicable.

(iv) Contractor actions that result in performance failures which unto themselves pose minor risk, but when viewed in the aggregate indicate degradation in the integrity of the contractor's safeguards and security management system relating to the protection of Restricted Data and other classified information.

(End of clause)

Alternate I (JAN 2004). As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.1504-5\(c\)\(2\)](#), replace paragraphs (a), (b)(1), (b)(2), and (b)(3) of the basic clause with the following paragraphs (a), (b)(1), (b)(2), and (b)(3) and delete paragraph (d).

(a) *General.*

(1) The payment of earned fee, fixed fee, profit, or share of cost savings under this contract is dependent upon the contractor's or contractor employees' compliance with the terms and conditions of this contract relating to environment, safety and health (ES&H), which includes worker safety and health (WS&H), including performance under an approved Integrated Safety Management System (ISMS).

(2) The ES&H performance requirements of this contract are set forth in its ES&H terms and conditions, including the DOE approved contractor ISMS or similar document. Financial incentives for timely mission accomplishment or cost effectiveness shall never compromise or impede full and effective implementation of the ISMS and full ES&H compliance.

(3) If the contractor does not meet the performance requirements of this contract relating to ES&H during any performance evaluation period established under the contract pursuant to the clause of this contract entitled, "Total Available Fee: Base Fee Amount and Performance Fee Amount," otherwise earned fee, fixed fee, profit or share of cost savings may be unilaterally reduced by the contracting officer.

(b) *Reduction amount.*

(1) The amount of earned fee, fixed fee, profit, or share of cost savings that may be unilaterally reduced will be determined by the severity of the performance failure pursuant to the degrees specified in paragraph (c) of this clause.

(2) If a reduction of earned fee, fixed fee, profit, or share of cost savings is warranted, unless mitigating factors apply, such reduction shall not be less than 26 percent nor greater than 100 percent of the amount of earned fee, fixed fee, profit, or the contractor's share of cost savings for a first degree performance failure, not less than 11 percent nor greater than 25 percent for a second degree performance failure, and up to 10 percent for a third degree performance failure.

(3) In determining the amount of the reduction and the applicability of mitigating factors, the contracting officer must consider the contractor's overall performance in meeting the ES&H requirements of the contract. Such consideration must include performance against any site specific performance criteria/requirements that provide additional definition, guidance for the amount of reduction, or guidance for the applicability of mitigating factors. In all cases, the contracting officer must consider mitigating factors that may warrant a reduction below the applicable range (*see* [48 CFR 970.1504-1-2](#)). The mitigating factors include the following.

- (i) Degree of control the contractor had over the event or incident.
- (ii) Efforts the contractor had made to anticipate and mitigate the possibility of the event in advance.
- (iii) Contractor self-identification and response to the event to mitigate impacts and recurrence.
- (iv) General status (trend and absolute performance) of ES&H and compliance in related areas.
- (v) Contractor demonstration to the Contracting Officer's satisfaction that the principles of industrial ES&H standards are routinely practiced (e.g., Voluntary Protection Program Star Status, or [ISO 14000 Certification](#)).
- (vi) Event caused by “Good Samaritan” act by the contractor (e.g., offsite emergency response).
- (vii) Contractor demonstration that a performance measurement system is routinely used to improve and maintain ES&H performance (including effective resource allocation) and to support DOE corporate decision-making (e.g., policy, ES&H programs).
- (viii) Contractor demonstration that an Operating Experience and Feedback Program is functioning that demonstrably affects continuous improvement in ES&H by use of lessons-learned and best practices inter- and intra-DOE sites.

Alternate II (JAN 2004). As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.1504-5\(c\)\(3\)](#), insert the following as paragraphs (e) and (f) in contracts awarded on a cost-plus-award fee, incentive fee or multiple fee basis (if *Alternate I* is also used, redesignate the following as paragraphs (d) and (e)).

(e) *Minimum requirements for specified level of performance.*

(1) At a minimum the contractor must perform the following:

- (i) The requirements with specific incentives which do not require the achievement of cost efficiencies in order to be performed at the level of performance set forth in the Statement of Work, Work Authorization Directive, or similar document unless an otherwise minimum level of performance has been established in the specific incentive;
- (ii) All of the performance requirements directly related to requirements specifically incentivized which do not require the achievement of cost efficiencies in order to be performed at a level of performance such that the overall performance of these related requirements is at an acceptable level; and
- (iii) All other requirements at a level of performance such that the total performance of the contract is not jeopardized.

(2) The evaluation of the Contractor's achievement of the level of performance shall be unilaterally determined by the Government. To the extent that the Contractor fails to achieve the minimum performance levels specified in the Statement of Work, Work Authorization Directive, or similar document, during the performance evaluation period, the DOE Operations/Field Office Manager, or designee, may reduce any otherwise earned fee, fixed fee, profit, or shared net savings for the performance evaluation period. Such reduction shall not result in the total of earned fee, fixed fee, profit, or shared net savings being less than 25 percent of the total available fee amount. Such 25 percent shall include base fee, if any.

(f) *Minimum requirements for cost performance.*

(1) Requirements incentivized by other than cost incentives must be performed within their specified cost constraint and must not adversely impact the costs of performing unrelated activities.

(2) The performance of requirements with a specific cost incentive must not adversely impact the costs of performing unrelated requirements.

(3) The contractor's performance within the stipulated cost performance levels for the performance evaluation period shall be determined by the Government. To the extent the contractor fails to achieve the stipulated cost performance levels, the DOE Operations/Field Office Manager, or designee, may reduce in whole or in part any otherwise earned fee, fixed fee, profit, or shared net savings for the performance evaluation period. Such reduction shall not result in the total of earned fee, fixed fee, profit or shared net savings being less than 25 percent of the total available fee amount. Such 25 percent shall include base fee, if any.

[[69 FR 68782](#), Dec. 10, 2004]

§970.5215-4 Cost reduction

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36375](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.1504-5\(d\)](#), insert the following clause:

Cost Reduction (DEC 2000)

(a) *General.* It is the Department of Energy's (DOE's) intent to have its facilities and laboratories operated in an efficient and effective manner. To this end, the Contractor shall assess its operations and identify areas where cost reductions would bring cost efficiency to operations without adversely affecting the level of performance required by the contract. The Contractor, to the maximum extent practical, shall identify areas where cost reductions may be effected, and develop and submit Cost Reduction Proposals (CRPs) to the contracting officer. If accepted, the Contractor may share in any shared net savings from accepted CRPs in accordance with paragraph (g) of this clause.

(b) *Definitions.* *Administrative cost* is the contractor cost of developing and administering the CRP.

Design, process, or method change is a change to a design, process, or method which has established cost, technical and schedule baseline, is defined, and is subject to a formal control procedure. Such a change must be innovative, initiated by the contractor, and applied to a specific project or program.

Development cost is the Contractor cost of up-front planning, engineering, prototyping, and testing of a design, process, or method.

DOE cost is the Government cost incurred implementing and validating the CRP.

Implementation cost is the Contractor cost of tooling, facilities, documentation, etc., required to effect a design, process, or method change once it has been tested and approved.

Net Savings means a reduction in the total amount (to include all related costs and fee) of performing the effort where the

savings revert to DOE control and may be available for deobligation. Such savings may result from a specific cost reduction effort which is negotiated on a cost-plus-incentive-fee, fixed-price incentive, or firm-fixed-price basis, or may result directly from a design, process, or method change. They may also be savings resulting from formal or informal direction given by DOE or from changes in the mission, work scope, or routine reorganization of the Contractor due to changes in the budget.

Shared Net Savings are those net savings which result from:

- (1) a specific cost reduction effort which is negotiated on a cost-plus-incentive-fee or fixed-price incentive basis, and is the difference between the negotiated target cost of performing an effort as negotiated and the actual allowable cost of performing that effort; or
- (2) a design, process, or method change, which occurs in the fiscal year in which the change is accepted and the subsequent fiscal year, and is the difference between the estimated cost of performing an effort as originally planned and the actual allowable cost of performing that same effort utilizing a revised plan intended to reduce costs along with any Contractor development costs, implementation costs, administrative costs, and DOE costs associated with the revised plan. Administrative costs and DOE costs are only included at the discretion of the contracting officer. Savings resulting from formal or informal direction given by the DOE or changes in the mission, work scope, or routine reorganization of the Contractor due to changes in the budget are not to be considered as shared net savings for purposes of this clause and do not qualify for incentive sharing.

(c) *Procedure for submission of CRPs.*

- (1) CRPs for the establishment of cost-plus-incentive-fee, fixed-price incentive, or firm-fixed-price efforts or for design, process, or methods changes submitted by the Contractor shall contain, at a minimum, the following:
 - (i) Current Method (Baseline)-A verifiable description of the current scope of work, cost, and schedule to be impacted by the initiative, and supporting documentation.
 - (ii) New Method (New Proposed Baseline)-A verifiable description of the new scope of work, cost, and schedule, how the initiative will be accomplished, and supporting documentation.
 - (iii) Feasibility Assessment-A description and evaluation of the proposed initiative and benefits, risks, and impacts of implementation. This evaluation shall include an assessment of the difference between the current method (baseline) and proposed new method including all related costs.
- (2) In addition, CRPs for the establishment of cost-plus-incentive-fee, fixed-price incentive, or firm-fixed-price efforts shall contain, at a minimum, the following:
 - (i) The proposed contractual arrangement and the justification for its use; and
 - (ii) A detailed cost/price estimate and supporting rationale. If the approach is proposed on an incentive basis, minimum and maximum cost estimates should be included along with any proposed sharing arrangements.

(d) *Evaluation and decision.* All CRPs must be submitted to and approved by the contracting officer. Included in the information provided by the CRP must be a discussion of the extent the proposed cost reduction effort may:

- (1) Pose a risk to the health and safety of workers, the community, or to the environment;
- (2) Result in a waiver or deviation from DOE requirements, such as DOE Orders and joint oversight agreements;
- (3) Require a change in other contractual agreements;
- (4) Result in significant organizational and personnel impacts;
- (5) Create a negative impact on the cost, schedule, or scope of work in another area;

(6) Pose a potential negative impact on the credibility of the Contractor or the DOE; and

(7) Impact successful and timely completion of any of the work in the cost, technical, and schedule baseline.

(e) *Acceptance or rejection of CRPs.* Acceptance or rejection of a CRP is a unilateral determination made by the contracting officer. The contracting officer will notify the Contractor that a CRP has been accepted, rejected, or deferred within (*Insert Number*) days of receipt. The only CRPs that will be considered for acceptance are those which the Contractor can demonstrate, at a minimum, will:

(1) Result in net savings (in the sharing period if a design, process, or method change);

(2) Not reappear as costs in subsequent periods; and

(3) Not result in any impairment of essential functions.

(f) The failure of the contracting officer to notify the Contractor of the acceptance, rejection, or deferral of a CRP within the specified time shall not be construed as approval.

(g) *Adjustment to original estimated cost and fee.* If a CRP is established on a cost-plus-incentive-fee, fixed-price incentive or firm-fixed-price basis, the originally estimated cost and fee for the total effort shall be adjusted to remove the estimated cost and fee amount associated with the CRP effort.

(h) *Sharing arrangement.* If a CRP is accepted, the Contractor may share in the shared net savings. For a CRP negotiated on a cost-plus-incentive-fee or fixed-price incentive basis, with the specific incentive arrangement (negotiated target costs, target fees, share lines, ceilings, profit, etc.) set forth in the contractual document authorizing the effort, the Contractor's share shall be the actual fee or profit resulting from such an arrangement. For a CRP negotiated as a cost savings incentive resulting from a design, process, or method change, the Contractor's share shall be a percentage, not to exceed 25% of the shared net savings. The specific percentage and sharing period shall be set forth in the contractual document.

(i) *Validation of Shared Net Savings.* The contracting officer shall validate actual shared net savings. If actual shared net savings cannot be validated, the contractor will not be entitled to a share of the net shared savings.

(j) *Relationship to other incentives.* Only those benefits of an accepted CRP not rewardable under other clauses of this contract shall be rewarded under this clause.

(k) *Subcontracts.* The Contractor may include a clause similar to this clause in any subcontract. In calculating any estimated shared net savings in a CRP under this contract, the Contractor's administration, development, and implementation costs shall include any subcontractor's allowable costs, and any CRP incentive payments to a subcontractor resulting from the acceptance of such CRP. The Contractor may choose any arrangement for subcontractor CRP incentive payments, provided that the payments not reduce the DOE's share of shared net savings.

(End of clause)

§970.5215-5 Limitation on fee

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36375](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36376](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.1504-5\(e\)](#), the contracting officer shall insert the following provision:

Limitation on Fee (DEC 2000)

(a) For the purpose of this solicitation, fee amounts shall not exceed the total available fee allowed by the fee policy at [48 CFR 970.1504-1-1](#), or as specifically stated elsewhere in the solicitation.

(b) The Government reserves the unilateral right, in the event an offeror's proposal is selected for award, to limit: fixed fee to not exceed an amount established pursuant to [48 CFR 970.1504-1-5](#); and total available fee to not exceed an amount established pursuant to [48 CFR 970.1504-1-9](#); or fixed fee or total available fee to an amount as specifically stated elsewhere in the solicitation.

(End of clause)

§970.5217-1 Work for Others Program

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36375](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in 48 CFR (DEAR) 970.1707-4 insert the following clause:

Work for Others Program (Non-DOE Funded Work) (JAN 2005)

(a) *Authority to perform work for others.* Pursuant to the Economy Act of 1932, as amended ([31 U.S.C. 1535](#)), and the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended ([42 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.](#)) or other applicable authority, the Contractor may perform work for non-DOE entities (sponsors) on a fully reimbursable basis in accordance with this clause.

(b) *Contractor's implementation.* The Contractor must draft, implement, and maintain formal policies, practices, and procedures in accordance with this clause, which must be submitted to the Contracting Officer for review and approval.

(c) *Conditions of participation in work for others program.* The Contractor:

- (1) Must not perform Work for Others activities that would place it in direct competition with the domestic private sector;
- (2) Must not respond to a request for proposals or any other solicitation from another Federal agency or non-Federal organization that involves direct comparative competition, either as an offeror, team member, or subcontractor to an offeror; however, the Contractor may, following notification to the Contracting Officer, respond to Broad Agency Announcements, Financial Assistance solicitations, and similar solicitations from another Federal Agency or non-Federal organizations when the selection is based on merit or peer review, the work involves basic or applied research to further advance scientific knowledge or understanding, and a response does not result in direct, comparative competition;
- (3) Must not commence work on any Work for Others activity until a Work for Others proposal package has been approved by the DOE Contracting Officer or designated representative;
- (4) Must not incur project costs until receipt of DOE notification that a budgetary resource is available for the project, except as provided in [48 CFR 970.5232-6](#);
- (5) Must ensure that all costs associated with the performance of the work, including specifically all DOE direct costs and applicable surcharges, are included in any Work for Others proposal;

(6) Must maintain records for the accumulation of costs and the billing of such work to ensure that DOE's appropriated funds are not used in support of Work for Others activities and to provide an accounting of the expenditures to DOE and the sponsor upon request;

(7) Must perform all Work for Others projects in accordance with the standards, policies, and procedures that apply to performance under this contract, including but not limited to environmental, safety and health, security, safeguards and classification procedures, and human and animal research regulations;

(8) May subcontract portion(s) of a Work for Others project; however, the Contractor must select the subcontractor and the work to be subcontracted. Any subcontracted work must be in direct support of the DOE contractor's performance as defined in the DOE approved work for others proposal package; and,

(9) Must maintain a summary listing of project information for each active Work for Others project, consisting of:

- (i) Sponsoring agency;
- (ii) Total estimated costs;
- (iii) Project title and description;
- (iv) Project point of contact; and,
- (v) Estimated start and completion dates.

(d) *Negotiation and execution of work for others agreement.*

(1) When delegated authority by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor may negotiate the terms and conditions that will govern the performance of a specific Work for Others project. Such terms and conditions must be consistent with the terms, conditions, and requirements of the Contractor's contract with DOE. The Contractor may use DOE-approved contract terms and conditions as delineated in DOE Manual 481.1-1A or terms and conditions previously approved by the responsible Contracting Officer or authorized designee for agreements with non-Federal entities. The Contractor must not hold itself out as representing DOE when negotiating the proposed Work for Others agreement.

(2) The Contractor must submit all Work for Others agreements to the DOE Contracting Officer for DOE review and approval. The Contractor may not execute any proposed agreement until it has received notice of DOE approval.

(e) *Preparation of project proposals.* When the Contractor proposes to perform Work for Others activities pursuant to this clause, it may assist the project sponsor in the preparation of project proposal packages including the preparation of cost estimates.

(f) *Work for others appraisals.* DOE may conduct periodic appraisals of the Contractor's compliance with its Work for Others Program policies, practices and procedures. The Contractor must provide facilities and other support in conjunction with such appraisals as directed by the Contracting Officer or authorized designee.

(g) *Annual work for others report.* The Contractor must provide assistance as required by the Contracting Officer or authorized designee in the preparation of a DOE Annual Summary Report of Work for Others Activities under the contract.

[69 FR 75004, Dec. 15, 2004]

§970.5222-1 Collective Bargaining Agreements Management and Operating

Contracts

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36375](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.2201-1-3](#), insert the following clause:

Collective Bargaining Agreements-Management and Operating Contracts (DEC 2000)

When negotiating collective bargaining agreements applicable to the work force under this contract, the Contractor shall use its best efforts to ensure such agreements contain provisions designed to assure continuity of services. All such agreements entered into during the contract period of performance should provide that grievances and disputes involving the interpretation or application of the agreement will be settled without resorting to strike, lockout, or other interruption of normal operations. For this purpose, each collective bargaining agreement should provide an effective grievance procedure with arbitration as its final step, unless the parties mutually agree upon some other method of assuring continuity of operations. As part of such agreements, management and labor should agree to cooperate fully with the Federal Mediation and Conciliation Service. The contractor shall include the substance of this clause in any subcontracts for protective services or other services performed on the DOE-owned site which will affect the continuity of operation of the facility.

(End of clause)

§970.5222-2 Overtime management

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36375](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.2201-2-2](#), insert the following clause:

Overtime Management (DEC 2000)

(a) The contractor shall maintain adequate internal controls to ensure that employee overtime is authorized only if cost effective and necessary to ensure performance of work under this contract.

(b) The contractor shall notify the contracting officer when in any given year it is likely that overtime usage as a percentage of payroll may exceed 4%.

(c) The contracting officer may require the submission, for approval, of a formal annual overtime control plan whenever contractor overtime usage as a percentage of payroll has exceeded, or is likely to exceed, 4%, or if the contracting officer otherwise deems overtime expenditures excessive. The plan shall include, at a minimum:

- (1) An overtime premium fund (maximum dollar amount);
- (2) Specific controls for casual overtime for non-exempt employees;
- (3) Specific parameters for allowability of exempt overtime;
- (4) An evaluation of alternatives to the use of overtime; and

(5) Submission of a semi-annual report that includes for exempt and non-exempt employees:

- (i) Total cost of overtime;
- (ii) Total cost of straight time;
- (iii) Overtime cost as a percentage of straight-time cost;
- (iv) Total overtime hours;
- (v) Total straight-time hours; and
- (vi) Overtime hours as a percentage of straight-time hours.

(End of clause)

§970.5223-1 Integration of environment, safety, and health into work planning and execution

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36375](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.2303-2\(a\)](#), insert the following clause:

Integration of Environment, Safety, and Health Into Work Planning and Execution (DEC 2000)

(a) For the purposes of this clause,

- (1) Safety encompasses environment, safety and health, including pollution prevention and waste minimization; and
- (2) Employees include subcontractor employees.

(b) In performing work under this contract, the contractor shall perform work safely, in a manner that ensures adequate protection for employees, the public, and the environment, and shall be accountable for the safe performance of work. The contractor shall exercise a degree of care commensurate with the work and the associated hazards. The contractor shall ensure that management of environment, safety and health (ES&H) functions and activities becomes an integral but visible part of the contractor's work planning and execution processes. The contractor shall, in the performance of work, ensure that:

- (1) Line management is responsible for the protection of employees, the public, and the environment. Line management includes those contractor and subcontractor employees managing or supervising employees performing work.
- (2) Clear and unambiguous lines of authority and responsibility for ensuring (ES&H) are established and maintained at all organizational levels.
- (3) Personnel possess the experience, knowledge, skills, and abilities that are necessary to discharge their

responsibilities.

(4) Resources are effectively allocated to address ES&H, programmatic, and operational considerations. Protecting employees, the public, and the environment is a priority whenever activities are planned and performed.

(5) Before work is performed, the associated hazards are evaluated and an agreed-upon set of ES&H standards and requirements are established which, if properly implemented, provide adequate assurance that employees, the public, and the environment are protected from adverse consequences.

(6) Administrative and engineering controls to prevent and mitigate hazards are tailored to the work being performed and associated hazards. Emphasis should be on designing the work and/or controls to reduce or eliminate the hazards and to prevent accidents and unplanned releases and exposures.

(7) The conditions and requirements to be satisfied for operations to be initiated and conducted are established and agreed-upon by DOE and the contractor. These agreed-upon conditions and requirements are requirements of the contract and binding upon the contractor. The extent of documentation and level of authority for agreement shall be tailored to the complexity and hazards associated with the work and shall be established in a Safety Management System.

(c) The contractor shall manage and perform work in accordance with a documented Safety Management System (System) that fulfills all conditions in paragraph (b) of this clause at a minimum. Documentation of the System shall describe how the contractor will:

(1) Define the scope of work;

(2) Identify and analyze hazards associated with the work;

(3) Develop and implement hazard controls;

(4) Perform work within controls; and

(5) Provide feedback on adequacy of controls and continue to improve safety management.

(d) The System shall describe how the contractor will establish, document, and implement safety performance objectives, performance measures, and commitments in response to DOE program and budget execution guidance while maintaining the integrity of the System. The System shall also describe how the contractor will measure system effectiveness.

(e) The contractor shall submit to the contracting officer documentation of its System for review and approval. Dates for submittal, discussions, and revisions to the System will be established by the contracting officer. Guidance on the preparation, content, review, and approval of the System will be provided by the contracting officer. On an annual basis, the contractor shall review and update, for DOE approval, its safety performance objectives, performance measures, and commitments consistent with and in response to DOE's program and budget execution guidance and direction. Resources shall be identified and allocated to meet the safety objectives and performance commitments as well as maintain the integrity of the entire System. Accordingly, the System shall be integrated with the contractor's business processes for work planning, budgeting, authorization, execution, and change control.

(f) The contractor shall comply with, and assist the Department of Energy in complying with, ES&H requirements of all applicable laws and regulations, and applicable directives identified in the clause of this contract entitled "Laws, Regulations, and DOE Directives." The contractor shall cooperate with Federal and non-Federal agencies having jurisdiction over ES&H matters under this contract.

(g) The contractor shall promptly evaluate and resolve any noncompliance with applicable ES&H requirements and the System. If the contractor fails to provide resolution or if, at any time, the contractor's acts or failure to act causes substantial harm or an imminent danger to the environment or health and safety of employees or the public, the contracting officer may issue an order stopping work in whole or in part. Any stop work order issued by a contracting officer under this clause (or issued by the contractor to a subcontractor in accordance with paragraph (i) of this clause) shall be without prejudice to any other legal or contractual rights of the Government. In the event that the contracting officer issues a stop work order, an

order authorizing the resumption of the work may be issued at the discretion of the contracting officer. The contractor shall not be entitled to an extension of time or additional fee or damages by reason of, or in connection with, any work stoppage ordered in accordance with this clause.

(h) Regardless of the performer of the work, the contractor is responsible for compliance with the ES&H requirements applicable to this contract. The contractor is responsible for flowing down the ES&H requirements applicable to this contract to subcontracts at any tier to the extent necessary to ensure the contractor's compliance with the requirements.

(i) The contractor shall include a clause substantially the same as this clause in subcontracts involving complex or hazardous work on site at a DOE-owned or -leased facility. Such subcontracts shall provide for the right to stop work under the conditions described in paragraph (g) of this clause. Depending on the complexity and hazards associated with the work, the contractor may choose not to require the subcontractor to submit a Safety Management System for the contractor's review and approval.

(End of clause)

§970.5223-2 Affirmative procurement program

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in 48 CFR (DEAR) 970.2304-2, insert the following clause in contracts for the management and operation of DOE facilities, including national laboratories.

Affirmative Procurement Program-March 2003

(a) In the performance of this contract, the Contractor shall comply with the requirements of Executive Order 13101 and the U.S. Department of Energy (DOE) Affirmative Procurement Program Guidance. This guidance includes requirements concerning environmentally preferable products and services, recycled content products and biobased products. This guidance is available on the Internet.

(b) In complying with the requirements of paragraph (a) of this clause, the Contractor shall coordinate its activities with the DOE Recycling Coordinator. Reports required by paragraph (c) of this clause shall be submitted through the DOE Recycling Coordinator.

(c) The Contractor shall prepare and submit reports, at the end of the Federal fiscal year, on matters related to the acquisition of items designated in EPA's Comprehensive Procurement Guidelines that Federal agencies and their Contractors are to procure with recovered/recycled content.

(d) If the Contractor subcontracts a significant portion of the operation of the Government facility which includes the acquisition of items designated in EPA's Comprehensive Procurement Guidelines, the subcontract shall contain a clause substantially the same as this clause. The EPA Comprehensive Procurement Guidelines identify products which Federal agencies and their Contractors are to procure with recycled content pursuant to [40 CFR 247](#). Examples of such a subcontract would be operation of the facility supply function, construction or remodeling at the facility, or maintenance of the facility motor vehicle fleet. In situations in which the facility management contractor can reasonably determine the amount of products with recovered/recycled content to be acquired under the subcontract, the facility management contractor is not required to flow down the reporting requirement of this clause. Instead, the facility management contractor may include such quantities in its own report and include an agreement in the subcontract that such products will be acquired with recovered/recycled content and that the subcontractor will advise if it is unable to procure such products with recovered/recycled content because the product is not available:

(i) Competitively within a reasonable time;

(ii) At a reasonable price; or,

(iii) Within the performance requirements.

If reports are required of the subcontractor, such reports shall be submitted to the facility management contractor. The reports may be submitted at the conclusion of the subcontract term provided that the subcontract delivery term is not multi-year in nature. If the delivery term is multi-year, the subcontractor shall report its accomplishments for each Federal fiscal year in a manner and at a time or times acceptable to both parties

(e) When this clause is used in a subcontract, the word “Contractor” will be understood to mean “subcontractor” and the term “DOE Recycling Coordinator” will be understood to mean “Contractor Recycling Coordinator.”

[[68 FR 6359](#), Feb. 7, 2003]

§970.5223-3 Agreement regarding Workplace Substance Abuse Programs at DOE facilities

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36375](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in 970.2305-4(a), the contracting officer shall insert the following provision:

Agreement Regarding Workplace Substance Abuse Programs at DOE Sites (DEC 2000)

(a) Any contract awarded as a result of this solicitation will be subject to the policies, criteria, and procedures of [10 CFR part 707](#), Workplace Substance Abuse Programs at DOE Sites.

(b) By submission of its offer, the offeror agrees to provide to the contracting officer, within 30 days after notification of selection for award, or award of a contract, whichever occurs first, pursuant to this solicitation, its written workplace substance abuse program consistent with the requirements of [10 CFR part 707](#).

(c) Failure of the offeror to agree to the condition of responsibility set forth in paragraph (b) of this provision, renders the offeror unqualified and ineligible for award.

(End of provision)

§970.5223-4 Workplace Substance Abuse Programs at DOE Sites

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36375](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.2305-4\(b\)](#), insert the following clause:

Workplace Substance Abuse Programs at DOE Sites (DEC 2000)

(a) *Program implementation.* The contractor shall, consistent with [10 CFR part 707](#), Workplace Substance Abuse Programs at DOE Sites, incorporated herein by reference with full force and effect, develop, implement, and maintain a workplace substance abuse program.

(b) *Remedies.* In addition to any other remedies available to the Government, the contractor's failure to comply with the requirements of [10 CFR part 707](#) or to perform in a manner consistent with its approved program may render the contractor subject to: the suspension of contract payments, or, where applicable, a reduction in award fee; termination for default; and suspension or debarment.

(c) *Subcontracts.*

(1) The contractor agrees to notify the contracting officer reasonably in advance of, but not later than 30 days prior to, the award of any subcontract the contractor believes may be subject to the requirements of [10 CFR part 707](#).

(2) The DOE prime contractor shall require all subcontracts subject to the provisions of [10 CFR part 707](#) to agree to develop and implement a workplace substance abuse program that complies with the requirements of [10 CFR part 707](#), Workplace Substance Abuse Programs at DOE Sites, as a condition for award of the subcontract. The DOE prime contractor shall review and approve each subcontractor's program, and shall periodically monitor each subcontractor's implementation of the program for effectiveness and compliance with [10 CFR part 707](#).

(3) The contractor agrees to include, and require the inclusion of, the requirements of this clause in all subcontracts, at any tier, that are subject to the provisions of [10 CFR part 707](#).

(End of clause)

§970.5223-5 DOE motor vehicle fleet fuel efficiency

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.2307-2](#), insert the following clause in contracts providing for Contractor management of the motor vehicle fleet.

DOE motor vehicle fleet fuel efficiency (OCT 2003)

When managing Government-owned vehicles for the Department of Energy, the Contractor will conduct operations relating to such vehicles in accordance with the goals and requirements of *Executive Order 13149, Greening the Government Through Federal Fleet and Transportation Efficiency*, and implementing guidance contained in the document entitled *U.S. Department of Energy Compliance Strategy for Executive Order 13149* (April 2001) and future revisions of this compliance strategy that are identified in writing by the Contracting Officer. Section 506 of Executive Order 13149 exempts military tactical, law enforcement, and emergency vehicles from the requirements of the order.

(End of clause)

[[71 FR 52132](#), Sept. 2, 2003]

§970.5226-1 Diversity plan

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.2671-2](#), insert the following clause:

Diversity Plan (DEC 2000)

The Contractor shall submit a Diversity Plan to the contracting officer for approval within 90 days after the effective date of this contract (or contract modification, if appropriate). The contractor shall submit an update to its Plan annually or with its annual fee proposal. Guidance for preparation of a Diversity Plan is provided in Appendix __. The Plan shall include innovative strategies for increasing opportunities to fully use the talents and capabilities of a diverse work force. The Plan shall address, at a minimum, the Contractor's approach for promoting diversity through (1) the Contractor's work force, (2) educational outreach, (3) community involvement and outreach, (4) subcontracting, (5) economic development (including technology transfer), and (6) the prevention of profiling based on race or national origin.

(End of clause)

§970.5226-2 Workforce restructuring under section 3161 of the National Defense Authorization Act for fiscal year 1993

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.2672-3](#), insert the following clause:

Workforce Restructuring under Section 3161 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993 (DEC 2000)

(a) Consistent with the objectives of Section 3161 of the National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 1993, [42 U.S.C. 7274h](#), in instances where the Department of Energy has determined that a change in workforce at a Department of Energy Defense Nuclear Facility is necessary, the contractor agrees to (1) comply with the Department of Energy Workforce Restructuring Plan for the facility, if applicable, and (2) use its best efforts to accomplish workforce restructuring or displacement so as to mitigate social and economic impacts.

(b) The requirements of this clause shall be included in subcontracts at any tier (except subcontracts for commercial items pursuant to [41 U.S.C. 403](#)) expected to exceed \$500,000.

(End of clause)

§970.5226-3 Community commitment

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.2673-2](#), insert the following clause:

Community Commitment (DEC 2000)

It is the policy of the DOE to be a constructive partner in the geographic region in which DOE conducts its business. The basic elements of this policy include: (1) Recognizing the diverse interests of the region and its stakeholders, (2) engaging regional stakeholders in issues and concerns of mutual interest, and (3) recognizing that giving back to the community is a worthwhile business practice. Accordingly, the Contractor agrees that its business operations and performance under the Contract will be consistent with the intent of the policy and elements set forth above.

(End of clause)

§970.5227-1 Rights in data-facilities

As prescribed in 48 CFR 970.2704-3(a), insert the following clause:

Rights in Data-Facilities (DEC 2000)

(a) *Definitions.* (1) *Computer data bases*, as used in this clause, means a collection of data in a form capable of, and for the purpose of, being stored in, processed, and operated on by a computer. The term does not include computer software.

(2) *Computer software*, as used in this clause, means (i) computer programs which are data comprising a series of instructions, rules, routines, or statements, regardless of the media in which recorded, that allow or cause a computer to perform a specific operation or series of operations and (ii) data comprising source code listings, design details, algorithms, processes, flow charts, formulae, and related material that would enable the computer program to be produced, created, or compiled. The term does not include computer data bases.

(3) *Data*, as used in this clause, means recorded information, regardless of form or the media on which it may be recorded. The term includes technical data and computer software. The term "data" does not include data incidental to the administration of this contract, such as financial, administrative, cost and pricing, or management information.

(4) *Limited rights data*, as used in this clause, means data, other than computer software, developed at private expense that embody trade secrets or are commercial or financial and confidential or privileged. The Government's rights to use, duplicate, or disclose limited rights data are as set forth in the Limited Rights Notice of subparagraph (e) of this clause.

(5) *Restricted computer software*, as used in this clause, means computer software developed at private expense and that is a trade secret; is commercial or financial and is confidential or privileged; or is published copyrighted computer software, including minor modifications of any such computer software. The Government's rights to use, duplicate, or disclose restricted computer software are as set forth in the Restricted Rights Notice of paragraph (f) of this clause.

(6) *Technical data*, as used in this clause, means recorded data, regardless of form or characteristic, that are of a scientific or technical nature. Technical data does not include computer software, but does include manuals and instructional materials and technical data formatted as a computer data base.

(7) *Unlimited rights*, as used in this clause, means the right of the Government to use, disclose, reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, including by electronic means, and perform publicly and display publicly, in any manner, including by electronic means, and for any purpose whatsoever, and to have or permit others to do so.

(b) *Allocation of Rights.* (1) The Government shall have:

(i) Ownership of all technical data and computer software first produced in the performance of this Contract;

(ii) Unlimited rights in technical data and computer software specifically used in the performance of this Contract, except as provided herein regarding copyright, limited rights data, or restricted computer software, or except for other data specifically protected by statute for a period of time or, where, approved by DOE, appropriate instances of the DOE Work for Others Program;

(iii) The right to inspect technical data and computer software first produced or specifically used in the performance of this Contract at all reasonable times. The Contractor shall make available all necessary facilities to allow DOE personnel to perform such inspection;

(iv) The right to have all technical data and computer software first produced or specifically used in the performance of this Contract delivered to the Government or otherwise disposed of by the Contractor, either as the contracting officer may from time to time direct during the progress of the work or in any event as the contracting officer shall direct upon completion or termination of this Contract. The Contractor agrees to leave a copy of such data at the facility or plant to which such data relate, and to make available for access or to deliver to the Government such data upon request by the contracting officer. If such data are limited rights data or restricted computer software, the rights of the Government in such data shall be governed solely by the provisions of paragraph (e) of this clause ("Rights in Limited Rights Data") or paragraph (f) of this clause ("Rights in Restricted Computer Software"); and

(v) The right to remove, cancel, correct, or ignore any markings not authorized by the terms of this Contract on any data

furnished hereunder if, in response to a written inquiry by DOE concerning the propriety of the markings, the Contractor fails to respond thereto within 60 days or fails to substantiate the propriety of the markings. In either case DOE will notify the Contractor of the action taken.

(2) The Contractor shall have:

(i) The right to withhold limited rights data and restricted computer software unless otherwise provided in accordance with the provisions of this clause; and

(ii) The right to use for its private purposes, subject to patent, security or other provisions of this Contract, data it first produces in the performance of this Contract, except for data in DOE's Uranium Enrichment Technology, including diffusion, centrifuge, and atomic vapor laser isotope separation, provided the data requirements of this Contract have been met as of the date of the private use of such data.

(3) The Contractor agrees that for limited rights data or restricted computer software or other technical, business or financial data in the form of recorded information which it receives from, or is given access to by, DOE or a third party, including a DOE Contractor or subcontractor, and for technical data or computer software it first produces under this Contract which is authorized to be marked by DOE, the Contractor shall treat such data in accordance with any restrictive legend contained thereon.

(c) *Copyrighted Material.* (1) The Contractor shall not, without prior written authorization of the Patent Counsel, assert copyright in any technical data or computer software first produced in the performance of this contract. To the extent such authorization is granted, the Government reserves for itself and others acting on its behalf, a nonexclusive, paid-up, irrevocable, world-wide license for Governmental purposes to publish, distribute, translate, duplicate, exhibit, and perform any such data copyrighted by the Contractor.

(2) The Contractor agrees not to include in the technical data or computer software delivered under the contract any material copyrighted by the Contractor and not to knowingly include any material copyrighted by others without first granting or obtaining at no cost a license therein for the benefit of the Government of the same scope as set forth in paragraph (c)(1) of this clause. If the Contractor believes that such copyrighted material for which the license cannot be obtained must be included in the technical data or computer software to be delivered, rather than merely incorporated therein by reference, the Contractor shall obtain the written authorization of the contracting officer to include such material in the technical data or computer software prior to its delivery.

(d) *Subcontracting.* (1) Unless otherwise directed by the contracting officer, the Contractor agrees to use in subcontracts in which technical data or computer software is expected to be produced or in subcontracts for supplies that contain a requirement for production or delivery of data in accordance with the policy and procedures of 48 CFR Subpart 27.4 as supplemented by 48 CFR 927.401 through 927.409, the clause entitled, "Rights in Data-General" at 48 CFR 52.227-14 modified in accordance with 927.409(a) and including Alternate V. Alternates II through IV of that clause may be included as appropriate with the prior approval of DOE Patent Counsel, and the Contractor shall not acquire rights in a subcontractor's limited rights data or restricted computer software, except through the use of Alternates II or III, respectively, without the prior approval of DOE Patent Counsel. The clause at 48 CFR 52.227-16, Additional Data Requirements, shall be included in subcontracts in accordance with DEAR 927.409(h). The contractor shall use instead the Rights in Data-Facilities clause at 48 CFR 970.5227-1 in subcontracts, including subcontracts for related support services, involving the design or operation of any plants or facilities or specially designed equipment for such plants or facilities that are managed or operated under its contract with DOE.

(2) It is the responsibility of the Contractor to obtain from its subcontractors technical data and computer software and rights therein, on behalf of the Government, necessary to fulfill the Contractor's obligations to the Government with respect to such data. In the event of refusal by a subcontractor to accept a clause affording the Government such rights, the Contractor shall:

(i) Promptly submit written notice to the contracting officer setting forth reasons or the subcontractor's refusal and other pertinent information which may expedite disposition of the matter, and

(ii) Not proceed with the subcontract without the written authorization of the contracting officer.

(3) Neither the Contractor nor higher-tier subcontractors shall use their power to award subcontracts as economic leverage

to acquire rights in a subcontractor's limited rights data or restricted computer software for their private use.

(e) *Rights in Limited Rights Data.* Except as may be otherwise specified in this Contract as data which are not subject to this paragraph, the Contractor agrees to and does hereby grant to the Government an irrevocable, nonexclusive, paid-up license by or for the Government, in any limited rights data of the Contractor specifically used in the performance of this Contract, provided, however, that to the extent that any limited rights data when furnished or delivered is specifically identified by the Contractor at the time of initial delivery to the Government or a representative of the Government, such data shall not be used within or outside the Government except as provided in the "Limited Rights Notice" set forth. All such limited rights data shall be marked with the following "Limited Rights Notice":

Limited Rights Notice

These data contain "limited rights data," furnished under Contract No. _____ with the United States Department of Energy which may be duplicated and used by the Government with the express limitations that the "limited rights data" may not be disclosed outside the Government or be used for purposes of manufacture without prior permission of the Contractor, except that further disclosure or use may be made solely for the following purposes:

- (a) Use (except for manufacture) by support services contractors within the scope of their contracts;
- (b) This "limited rights data" may be disclosed for evaluation purposes under the restriction that the "limited rights data" be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed;
- (c) This "limited rights data" may be disclosed to other contractors participating in the Government's program of which this Contract is a part for information or use (except for manufacture) in connection with the work performed under their contracts and under the restriction that the "limited rights data" be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed;
- (d) This "limited rights data" may be used by the Government or others on its behalf for emergency repair or overhaul work under the restriction that the "limited rights data" be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed; and
- (e) Release to a foreign government, or instrumentality thereof, as the interests of the United States Government may require, for information or evaluation, or for emergency repair or overhaul work by such government. This Notice shall be marked on any reproduction of this data in whole or in part.

(End of notice)

(f) *Rights in restricted computer software.* (1) Except as may be otherwise specified in this Contract as data which are not subject to this paragraph, the Contractor agrees to and does hereby grant to the Government an irrevocable, nonexclusive, paid-up, license by or for the Government, in any restricted computer software of the Contractor specifically used in the performance of this Contract, provided, however, that to the extent that any restricted computer software when furnished or delivered is specifically identified by the Contractor at the time of initial delivery to the Government or a representative of the Government, such data shall not be used within or outside the Government except as provided in the "Restricted Rights Notice" set forth below. All such restricted computer software shall be marked with the following "Restricted Rights Notice":

Restricted Rights Notice-Long Form

(a) This computer software is submitted with restricted rights under Department of Energy Contract No. _____. It may not be used, reproduced, or disclosed by the Government except as provided in paragraph (b) of this notice.

(b) This computer software may be:

(1) Used or copied for use in or with the computer or computers for which it was acquired, including use at any Government installation to which such computer or computers may be transferred;

(2) Used, copied for use, in a backup or replacement computer if any computer for which it was acquired is inoperative or is replaced;

(3) Reproduced for safekeeping (archives) or backup purposes;

(4) Modified, adapted, or combined with other computer software, provided that only the portions of the derivative software consisting of the restricted computer software are to be made subject to the same restricted rights; and

(5) Disclosed to and reproduced for use by contractors under a service contract (of the type defined in [48 CFR 37.101](#)) in accordance with subparagraphs (b)(1) through (4) of this Notice, provided the Government makes such disclosure or reproduction subject to these restricted rights.

(c) Notwithstanding the foregoing, if this computer software has been published under copyright, it is licensed to the Government, without disclosure prohibitions, with the rights set forth in the restricted rights notice above.

(d) This Notice shall be marked on any reproduction of this computer software, in whole or in part.

(End of notice)

(2) Where it is impractical to include the Restricted Rights Notice on restricted computer software, the following short-form Notice may be used.

Restricted Rights Notice-Short Form

Use, reproduction, or disclosure is subject to restrictions set forth in the Long Form Notice of DOE Contract No. _____ with (name of Contractor).

(End of notice)

(3) If the software is embedded, or if it is commercially impractical to mark it with human readable text, then the symbol R and the clause date (mo/yr), in brackets or a box, a [R-mo/yr], may be used. This will be read to mean restricted computer software, subject to the rights of the Government as described in the Long Form Notice, in effect as of the date indicated next to the symbol. The symbol shall not be used to mark human readable material. In the event this Contract contains any variation to the rights in the Long Form Notice, then the contract number must also be cited.

(4) If restricted computer software is delivered with the copyright notice of [17 U.S.C. 401](#), the software will be presumed to be published copyrighted computer software licensed to the Government without disclosure prohibitions and with unlimited rights, unless the Contractor includes the following statement with such copyright notice “Unpublished-rights reserved under the Copyright Laws of the United States.”

(g) *Relationship to patents.* Nothing contained in this clause creates or is intended to imply a license to the Government in any patent or is intended to be construed as affecting the scope of any licenses or other rights otherwise granted to the Government under any patent.

(End of clause)

Alternate I (DEC 2000). As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.2704-3\(a\)](#), where access to Category C-24 restricted data is contemplated in the performance of a contract the contracting officer shall insert the phrase “and except Restricted Data in category C-24, [10 CFR part 725](#), in which DOE has reserved the right to receive reasonable compensation for the use of its inventions and discoveries, including related data and technology” after “laser isotope separation” and before the comma in paragraph (b)(2)(ii) of the clause at [48 CFR 970.5227-1](#), Rights in Data-Facilities, as appropriate.

(End of clause)

§970.5227-2 Rights in data-technology transfer

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.2704-3\(b\)](#), insert the following clause:

Rights in Data-Technology Transfer (DEC 2000)

(a) *Definitions.*

(1) *Computer data bases*, as used in this clause, means a collection of data in a form capable of, and for the purpose of, being stored in, processed, and operated on by a computer. The term does not include computer software.

(2) *Computer software*, as used in this clause, means (i) computer programs which are data comprising a series of instructions, rules, routines, or statements, regardless of the media in which recorded, that allow or cause a computer to perform a specific operation or series of operations and (ii) data comprising source code listings, design details, algorithms, processes, flow charts, formulae, and related material that would enable the computer program to be produced, created, or compiled. The term does not include computer data bases.

(3) *Data*, as used in this clause, means recorded information, regardless of form or the media on which it may be recorded. The term includes technical data and computer software. The term “data” does not include data incidental to the administration of this contract, such as financial, administrative, cost and pricing, or management information.

(4) *Limited rights data*, as used in this clause, means data, other than computer software, developed at private expense that embody trade secrets or are commercial or financial and confidential or privileged. The Government's rights to use, duplicate, or disclose limited rights data are as set forth in the Limited Rights Notice of paragraph (g) of this clause.

(5) *Restricted computer software*, as used in this clause, means computer software developed at private expense and that is a trade secret; is commercial or financial and is confidential or privileged; or is published copyrighted computer software, including minor modifications of any such computer software. The Government's rights to use, duplicate, or disclose restricted computer software are as set forth in the Restricted Rights Notice of subparagraph (h) of this clause.

(6) *Technical data*, as used in this clause, means recorded data, regardless of form or characteristic, that are of a scientific or technical nature. Technical data does not include computer software, but does include manuals and instructional materials and technical data formatted as a computer data base.

(7) *Unlimited rights*, as used in this clause, means the rights of the Government to use, disclose, reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, including by electronic means, and perform publicly and display publicly, in any manner, including by electronic means, and for any purpose whatsoever, and to have or permit others to do so.

(b) *Allocation of Rights.*

(1) The Government shall have:

(i) Ownership of all technical data and computer software first produced in the performance of this Contract;

(ii) Unlimited rights in technical data and computer software specifically used in the performance of this Contract, except as provided herein regarding copyright, limited rights data, or restricted computer software, and except for data subject to the withholding provisions for protected Cooperative Research and Development Agreement (CRADA) information in accordance with Technology Transfer actions under this Contract, or other data specifically protected by statute for a period of time or, where, approved by DOE, appropriate instances of the DOE Work for Others Program;

(iii) The right to inspect technical data and computer software first produced or specifically used in the

performance of this Contract at all reasonable times. The Contractor shall make available all necessary facilities to allow DOE personnel to perform such inspection;

(iv) The right to have all technical data and computer software first produced or specifically used in the performance of this Contract delivered to the Government or otherwise disposed of by the Contractor, either as the contracting officer may from time to time direct during the progress of the work or in any event as the contracting officer shall direct upon completion or termination of this Contract. The Contractor agrees to leave a copy of such data at the facility or plant to which such data relate, and to make available for access or to deliver to the Government such data upon request by the contracting officer. If such data are limited rights data or restricted computer software, the rights of the Government in such data shall be governed solely by the provisions of paragraph (g) of this clause ("Rights in Limited Rights Data") or paragraph (h) of this clause ("Rights in Restricted Computer Software"); and (v) The right to remove, cancel, correct, or ignore any markings not authorized by the terms of this Contract on any data furnished hereunder if, in response to a written inquiry by DOE concerning the propriety of the markings, the Contractor fails to respond thereto within 60 days or fails to substantiate the propriety of the markings. In either case DOE will notify the Contractor of the action taken.

(2) The Contractor shall have:

(i) The right to withhold limited rights data and restricted computer software unless otherwise provided in provisions of this clause;

(ii) The right to use for its private purposes, subject to patent, security or other provisions of this Contract, data it first produces in the performance of this Contract, except for data in DOE's Uranium Enrichment Technology, including diffusion, centrifuge, and atomic vapor laser isotope separation, provided the data requirements of this Contract have been met as of the date of the private use of such data; and

(iii) The right to assert copyright subsisting in scientific and technical articles as provided in paragraph (d) of this clause and the right to request permission to assert copyright subsisting in works other than scientific and technical articles as provided in paragraph (e) of this clause.

(3) The Contractor agrees that for limited rights data or restricted computer software or other technical business or financial data in the form of recorded information which it receives from, or is given access to by DOE or a third party, including a DOE contractor or subcontractor, and for technical data or computer software it first produces under this Contract which is authorized to be marked by DOE, the Contractor shall treat such data in accordance with any restrictive legend contained thereon.

(c) *Copyright (General).*

(1) The Contractor agrees not to mark, register, or otherwise assert copyright in any data in a published or unpublished work, other than as set forth in paragraphs (d) and (e) of this clause.

(2) Except for material to which the Contractor has obtained the right to assert copyright in accordance with either paragraph (d) or (e) of this clause, the Contractor agrees not to include in the data delivered under this Contract any material copyrighted by the Contractor and not to knowingly include any material copyrighted by others without first granting or obtaining at no cost a license therein for the benefit of the Government of the same scope as set forth in paragraph (d) of this clause. If the Contractor believes that such copyrighted material for which the license cannot be obtained must be included in the data to be delivered, rather than merely incorporated therein by reference, the Contractor shall obtain the written authorization of the contracting officer to include such material in the data prior to its delivery.

(d) *Copyrighted works (scientific and technical articles).*

(1) The Contractor shall have the right to assert, without prior approval of the contracting officer, copyright subsisting in scientific and technical articles composed under this contract or based on or containing data first produced in the performance of this Contract, and published in academic, technical or professional journals, symposia, proceedings, or similar works. When assertion of copyright is made, the Contractor shall affix the applicable copyright notice of [17 U.S.C. 401](#) or [402](#) and acknowledgment of Government sponsorship (including

contract number) on the data when such data are delivered to the Government as well as when the data are published or deposited for registration as a published work in the U.S. Copyright Office. The Contractor grants to the Government, and others acting on its behalf, a nonexclusive, paid-up, irrevocable, world-wide license in such copyrighted data to reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, and perform publicly and display publicly, by or on behalf of the Government.

(2) The contractor shall mark each scientific or technical article first produced or composed under this Contract and submitted for journal publication or similar means of dissemination with a notice, similar in all material respects to the following, on the front reflecting the Government's non-exclusive, paid-up, irrevocable, world-wide license in the copyright.

Notice: This manuscript has been authored by [insert the name of the Contractor] under Contract No. [insert the contract number] with the U.S. Department of Energy. The United States Government retains and the publisher, by accepting the article for publication, acknowledges that the United States Government retains a non-exclusive, paid-up, irrevocable, world-wide license to publish or reproduce the published form of this manuscript, or allow others to do so, for United States Government purposes.

(End of notice)

(3) The title to the copyright of the original of unclassified graduate theses and the original of related unclassified scientific papers shall vest in the author thereof, subject to the right of DOE to retain duplicates of such documents and to use such documents for any purpose whatsoever without any claim on the part of the author or the contractor for additional compensation.

(e) *Copyrighted works (other than scientific and technical articles and data produced under a CRADA)*. The Contractor may obtain permission to assert copyright subsisting in technical data and computer software first produced by the Contractor in performance of this Contract, where the Contractor can show that commercialization would be enhanced by such copyright protection, subject to the following:

(1) Contractor Request to Assert Copyright.

(i) For data other than scientific and technical articles and data produced under a CRADA, the Contractor shall submit in writing to Patent Counsel its request to assert copyright in data first produced in the performance of this Contract pursuant to this clause. The right of the Contractor to copyright data first produced under a CRADA is as described in the individual CRADA. Each request by the Contractor must include:

(A) The identity of the data (including any computer program) for which the Contractor requests permission to assert copyright, as well as an abstract which is descriptive of the data and is suitable for dissemination purposes,

(B) The program under which it was funded,

(C) Whether, to the best knowledge of the Contractor, the data is subject to an international treaty or agreement,

(D) Whether the data is subject to export control,

(E) A statement that the Contractor plans to commercialize the data in compliance with the clause of this contract entitled, "Technology Transfer Mission," within five (5) years after obtaining permission to assert copyright or, on a case-by-case basis, a specified longer period where the Contractor can demonstrate that the ability to commercialize effectively is dependent upon such longer period, and

(F) For data other than computer software, a statement explaining why the assertion of copyright is necessary to enhance commercialization and is consistent with DOE's dissemination responsibilities.

(ii) For data that is developed using other funding sources in addition to DOE funding, the permission to assert copyright in accordance with this clause must also be obtained by the Contractor from all other funding sources prior to the Contractor's request to Patent Counsel. The request shall include the Contractor's certification or other documentation acceptable to Patent Counsel demonstrating such permission has been obtained.

(iii) Permission for the Contractor to assert copyright in excepted categories of data as determined by DOE will be expressly withheld. Such excepted categories include data whose release (A) would be detrimental to national security, i.e., involve classified information or data or sensitive information under Section 148 of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, or are subject to export control for nonproliferation and other nuclear-related national security purposes, (B) would not enhance the appropriate transfer or dissemination and commercialization of such data, (C) would have a negative impact on U.S. industrial competitiveness, (D) would prevent DOE from meeting its obligations under treaties and international agreements, or (E) would be detrimental to one or more of DOE's programs. Additional excepted categories may be added by the Assistant General Counsel for Technology Transfer and Intellectual Property. Where data are determined to be under export control restriction, the Contractor may obtain permission to assert copyright subject to the provisions of this clause for purposes of limited commercialization in a manner that complies with export control statutes and applicable regulations. In addition, notwithstanding any other provision of this Contract, all data developed with Naval Reactors' funding and those data that are classified fall within excepted categories. The rights of the Contractor in data are subject to the disposition of data rights in the treaties and international agreements identified under this Contract as well as those additional treaties and international agreements which DOE may from time to time identify by unilateral amendment to the Contract; such amendment listing added treaties and international agreements is effective only for data which is developed after the date such treaty or international agreement is added to this Contract. Also, the Contractor will not be permitted to assert copyright in data in the form of various technical reports generated by the Contractor under the Contract without first obtaining the advanced written permission of the contracting officer.

(2) DOE Review and Response to Contractor's Request. The Patent Counsel shall use its best efforts to respond in writing within 90 days of receipt of a complete request by the Contractor to assert copyright in technical data and computer software pursuant to this clause. Such response shall either give or withhold DOE's permission for the Contractor to assert copyright or advise the Contractor that DOE needs additional time to respond, and the reasons therefor.

(3) Permission for Contractor to Assert Copyright.

(i) For computer software, the Contractor shall furnish to the DOE designated, centralized software distribution and control point, the Energy Science and Technology Software Center, at the time permission to assert copyright is given under paragraph (e)(2) of this clause: (A) An abstract describing the software suitable for publication, (B) the source code for each software program, and (C) the object code and at least the minimum support documentation needed by a technically competent user to understand and use the software. The Patent Counsel, for good cause shown by the Contractor, may allow the minimum support documentation to be delivered within 60 days after permission to assert copyright is given or at such time the minimum support documentation becomes available. The Contractor acknowledges that the DOE designated software distribution and control point may provide a technical description of the software in an announcement identifying its availability from the copyright holder.

(ii) Unless otherwise directed by the contracting officer, for data other than computer software to which the Contractor has received permission to assert copyright under paragraph (e)(2) of this clause above, the Contractor shall within sixty (60) days of obtaining such permission furnish to DOE's Office of Scientific and Technical Information (OSTI) a copy of such data as well as an abstract of the data suitable for dissemination purposes. The Contractor acknowledges that OSTI may provide an abstract of the data in an announcement to DOE, its contractors and to the public identifying its availability from the copyright holder.

(iii) For a five year period or such other specified period as specifically approved by Patent Counsel beginning on the date the Contractor is given permission to assert copyright in data, the Contractor grants to the Government, and others acting on its behalf, a paid-up, nonexclusive, irrevocable worldwide license in such copyrighted data to reproduce, prepare derivative works and perform publicly and display publicly, by or on behalf of the Government. Upon request, the initial period may be extended after DOE approval. The DOE approval will be based on the standard that the work is still commercially available and the market

demand is being met.

(iv) After the period approved by Patent Counsel for application of the limited Government license described in paragraph (e)(3)(iii) of this clause, or if, prior to the end of such period(s), the Contractor abandons commercialization activities pertaining to the data to which the Contractor has been given permission to assert copyright, the Contractor grants to the Government, and others acting on its behalf, a paid-up, nonexclusive, irrevocable worldwide license in such copyrighted data to reproduce, distribute copies to the public, prepare derivative works, perform publicly and display publicly, and to permit others to do so.

(v) Whenever the Contractor asserts copyright in data pursuant to this paragraph (e), the Contractor shall affix the applicable copyright notice of [17 U.S.C. 401](#) or 402 on the copyrighted data and also an acknowledgment of the Government sponsorship and license rights of paragraphs (e)(3) (iii) and (iv) of this clause. Such action shall be taken when the data are delivered to the Government, published, licensed or deposited for registration as a published work in the U.S. Copyright Office. The acknowledgment of Government sponsorship and license rights shall be as follows: Notice: These data were produced by (insert name of Contractor) under Contract No. _____ with the Department of Energy. For (period approved by DOE Patent Counsel) from (date permission to assert copyright was obtained), the Government is granted for itself and others acting on its behalf a nonexclusive, paid-up, irrevocable worldwide license in this data to reproduce, prepare derivative works, and perform publicly and display publicly, by or on behalf of the Government. There is provision for the possible extension of the term of this license. Subsequent to that period or any extension granted, the Government is granted for itself and others acting on its behalf a nonexclusive, paid-up, irrevocable worldwide license in this data to reproduce, prepare derivative works, distribute copies to the public, perform publicly and display publicly, and to permit others to do so. The specific term of the license can be identified by inquiry made to Contractor or DOE. Neither the United States nor the United States Department of Energy, nor any of their employees, makes any warranty, express or implied, or assumes any legal liability or responsibility for the accuracy, completeness, or usefulness of any data, apparatus, product, or process disclosed, or represents that its use would not infringe privately owned rights.

(End of notice)

(vi) With respect to any data to which the Contractor has received permission to assert copyright, the DOE has the right, during the five (5) year or specified longer period approved by Patent Counsel as provided for in paragraph (e) of this clause, to request the Contractor to grant a nonexclusive, partially exclusive or exclusive license in any field of use to a responsible applicant(s) upon terms that are reasonable under the circumstances, and if the Contractor refuses such request, to grant such license itself, if the DOE determines that the Contractor has not made a satisfactory demonstration that either it or its licensee(s) is actively pursuing commercialization of the data as set forth in subparagraph (e)(1)(A) of this clause. Before licensing under this subparagraph (vi), DOE shall furnish the Contractor a written request for the Contractor to grant the stated license, and the Contractor shall be allowed thirty (30) days (or such longer period as may be authorized by the contracting officer for good cause shown in writing by the Contractor) after such notice to show cause why the license should not be granted. The Contractor shall have the right to appeal the decision of the DOE to grant the stated license to the Invention Licensing Appeal Board as set forth in [10 CFR 781.65](#)-”Appeals.”

(vii) No costs shall be allowable for maintenance of copyrighted data, primarily for the benefit of the Contractor and/or a licensee which exceeds DOE Program needs, except as expressly provided in writing by the contracting officer. The Contractor may use its net royalty income to effect such maintenance costs.

(viii) At any time the Contractor abandons commercialization activities for data for which the Contractor has received permission to assert copyright in accordance with this clause, it shall advise OSTI and Patent Counsel and upon request assign the copyright to the Government so that the Government can distribute the data to the public.

(4) The following notice may be placed on computer software prior to any publication and prior to the Contractor's obtaining permission from the Department of Energy to assert copyright in the computer software pursuant to paragraph (c)(3) of this section.

Notice: This computer software was prepared by [insert the Contractor's name and the individual author], hereinafter the Contractor, under Contract [insert the Contract Number] with the Department of Energy (DOE). All rights in the computer software are reserved by DOE on behalf of the United States Government and the Contractor as provided in the Contract. You are authorized to use this computer software for Governmental purposes but it is not to be released or distributed to the public. NEITHER THE GOVERNMENT NOR THE CONTRACTOR MAKES ANY WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OR ASSUMES ANY LIABILITY FOR THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE. This notice including this sentence must appear on any copies of this computer software.

(End of notice)

(5) a similar notice can be used for data, other than computer software, upon approval of DOE Patent Counsel.

(f) *Subcontracting.*

(1) Unless otherwise directed by the contracting officer, the Contractor agrees to use in subcontracts in which technical data or computer software is expected to be produced or in subcontracts for supplies that contain a requirement for production or delivery of data in accordance with the policy and procedures of 48 CFR Subpart 27.4 as supplemented by 48 CFR 927.401 through 927.409, the clause entitled, "Rights in Data-General" at 48 CFR 52.227-14 modified in accordance with 927.409(a) and including Alternate V. Alternates II through IV of that clause may be included as appropriate with the prior approval of DOE Patent Counsel, and the Contractor shall not acquire rights in a subcontractor's limited rights data or restricted computer software, except through the use of Alternates II or III, respectively, without the prior approval of DOE Patent Counsel. The clause at 48 CFR 52.227-16, Additional Data Requirements, shall be included in subcontracts in accordance with 48 CFR 927.409(h). The Contractor shall use instead the Rights in Data-Facilities clause at 48 CFR 970.5227-1 in subcontracts, including subcontracts for related support services, involving the design or operation of any plants or facilities or specially designed equipment for such plants or facilities that are managed or operated under its contract with DOE.

(2) It is the responsibility of the Contractor to obtain from its subcontractors technical data and computer software and rights therein, on behalf of the Government, necessary to fulfill the Contractor's obligations to the Government with respect to such data. In the event of refusal by a subcontractor to accept a clause affording the Government such rights, the Contractor shall:

(i) Promptly submit written notice to the contracting officer setting forth reasons or the subcontractor's refusal and other pertinent information which may expedite disposition of the matter, and

(ii) Not proceed with the subcontract without the written authorization of the contracting officer.

(3) Neither the Contractor nor higher-tier subcontractors shall use their power to award subcontracts as economic leverage to acquire rights in a subcontractor's limited rights data and restricted computer software for their private use.

(g) *Rights in Limited Rights Data.* Except as may be otherwise specified in this Contract as data which are not subject to this paragraph, the Contractor agrees to and does hereby grant to the Government an irrevocable nonexclusive, paid-up license by or for the Government, in any limited rights data of the Contractor specifically used in the performance of this Contract, provided, however, that to the extent that any limited rights data when furnished or delivered is specifically identified by the Contractor at the time of initial delivery to the Government or a representative of the Government, such data shall not be used within or outside the Government except as provided in the "Limited Rights Notice" set forth below. All such limited rights data shall be marked with the following "Limited Rights Notice:"

Limited Rights Notice

These data contain "limited rights data," furnished under Contract No. _____ with the United States Department of Energy which may be duplicated and used by the Government with the express limitations that the "limited rights data" may not be disclosed outside the Government or be used for purposes of manufacture without prior permission of the Contractor, except that further disclosure or use may be made solely for the following purposes:

(a) Use (except for manufacture) by support services contractors within the scope of their contracts;

(b) This "limited rights data" may be disclosed for evaluation purposes under the restriction that the "limited rights data" be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed;

(c) This "limited rights data" may be disclosed to other contractors participating in the Government's program of which this Contract is a part for information or use (except for manufacture) in connection with the work performed under their contracts and under the restriction that the "limited rights data" be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed;

(d) This "limited rights data" may be used by the Government or others on its behalf for emergency repair or overhaul work under the restriction that the "limited rights data" be retained in confidence and not be further disclosed; and

(e) Release to a foreign government, or instrumentality thereof, as the interests of the United States Government may require, for information or evaluation, or for emergency repair or overhaul work by such government.

This Notice shall be marked on any reproduction of this data in whole or in part.

(End of notice)

(h) *Rights in restricted computer software.* (1) Except as may be otherwise specified in this Contract as data which are not subject to this paragraph, the Contractor agrees to and does hereby grant to the Government an irrevocable, nonexclusive, paid-up, license by or for the Government, in any restricted computer software of the Contractor specifically used in the performance of this Contract; provided, however, that to the extent that any restricted computer software when furnished or delivered is specifically identified by the Contractor at the time of initial delivery to the Government or a representative of the Government, such data shall not be used within or outside the Government except as provided in the "Restricted Rights Notice" set forth below. All such restricted computer software shall be marked with the following "Restricted Rights Notice:"

Restricted Rights Notice-Long Form

(a) This computer software is submitted with restricted rights under Department of Energy Contract No. _____. It may not be used, reproduced, or disclosed by the Government except as provided in paragraph (b) of this notice.

(b) This computer software may be:

(1) Used or copied for use in or with the computer or computers for which it was acquired, including use at any Government installation to which such computer or computers may be transferred;

(2) Used, copied for use, in a backup or replacement computer if any computer for which it was acquired is inoperative or is replaced;

(3) Reproduced for safekeeping (archives) or backup purposes;

(4) Modified, adapted, or combined with other computer software, provided that only the portions of the derivative software consisting of the restricted computer software are to be made subject to the same restricted rights; and

(5) Disclosed to and reproduced for use by contractors under a service contract (of the type defined in [48 CFR 37.101](#)) in accordance with subparagraphs (b)(1) through (4) of this Notice, provided the Government makes such disclosure or reproduction subject to these restricted rights.

(c) Notwithstanding the foregoing, if this computer software has been published under copyright, it is licensed to the Government, without disclosure prohibitions, with the rights set forth in the restricted rights notice above.

(d) This Notice shall be marked on any reproduction of this computer software, in whole or in part.

(End of notice)

(2) Where it is impractical to include the Restricted Rights Notice on restricted computer software, the following short-

form Notice may be used in lieu thereof:

Restricted Rights Notice-Short Form

Use, reproduction, or disclosure is subject to restrictions set forth in the Long Form Notice of DOE Contract No. ____ with (name of Contractor).

(End of notice)

(3) If the software is embedded, or if it is commercially impractical to mark it with human readable text, then the symbol R and the clause date (mo/yr) in brackets or a box, a [R-mo/yr], may be used. This will be read to mean restricted computer software, subject to the rights of the Government as described in the Long Form Notice, in effect as of the date indicated next to the symbol. The symbol shall not be used to mark human readable material. In the event this Contract contains any variation to the rights in the Long Form Notice, then the contract number must also be cited.

(4) If restricted computer software is delivered with the copyright notice of [17 U.S.C. 401](#), the software will be presumed to be published copyrighted computer software licensed to the Government without disclosure prohibitions and with unlimited rights, unless the Contractor includes the following statement with such copyright notice “Unpublished-rights reserved under the Copyright Laws of the United States.”

(i) *Relationship to patents.* Nothing contained in this clause creates or is intended to imply a license to the Government in any patent or is intended to be construed as affecting the scope of any licenses or other rights otherwise granted to the Government under any patent.

(End of clause)

Alternate I (DEC 2000). As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.2704-3\(b\)](#), where access to Category C-24 restricted data is contemplated in the performance of a contract the contracting officer shall insert the phrase “and except Restricted Data in category C-24, [10 CFR part 725](#), in which DOE has reserved the right to receive reasonable compensation for the use of its inventions and discoveries, including related data and technology” after “laser isotope separation” and before the comma in paragraph (b)(2)(ii) of the clause at [48 CFR 970.5227-2](#), Rights in Data-Technology Transfer, as appropriate.

(End of clause)

§970.5227-3 Technology transfer mission

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.2770-4\(a\)](#), insert the following clause:

Technology Transfer Mission (AUG 2002)

This clause has as its purpose implementation of the National Competitiveness Technology Transfer Act of 1989 (Sections 3131, 3132, 3133, and 3157 of Pub. L. 101-189 and as amended by Pub. L. 103-160, Sections 3134 and 3160). The Contractor shall conduct technology transfer activities with a purpose of providing benefit from Federal research to U.S. industrial competitiveness.

(a) *Authority.*

(1) In order to ensure the full use of the results of research and development efforts of, and the capabilities of, the Laboratory, technology transfer, including Cooperative Research and Development Agreements (CRADAs), is established as a mission of the Laboratory consistent with the policy, principles and purposes of Sections 11(a)(1)

and 12(g) of the Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1980, as amended (15 U.S.C. 3710a); Section 3132(b) of Pub. L. 101-189, Sections 3134 and 3160 of Pub. L. 103-160, and of Chapter 38 of the Patent Laws (35 U.S.C. 200 *et seq.*); Section 152 of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended (42 U.S.C. 2182); Section 9 of the Federal Nonnuclear Energy Research and Development Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. 5908); and Executive Order 12591 of April 10, 1987.

(2) In pursuing the technology transfer mission, the Contractor is authorized to conduct activities including but not limited to: identifying and protecting Intellectual Property made, created or acquired at or by the Laboratory; negotiating licensing agreements and assignments for Intellectual Property made, created or acquired at or by the Laboratory that the Contractor controls or owns; bailments; negotiating all aspects of and entering into CRADAs; providing technical consulting and personnel exchanges; conducting science education activities and reimbursable Work for Others (WFO); providing information exchanges; and making available laboratory or weapon production user facilities. It is fully expected that the Contractor shall use all of the mechanisms available to it to accomplish this technology transfer mission, including, but not limited to, CRADAs, user facilities, WFO, science education activities, consulting, personnel, assignments, and licensing in accordance with this clause.

(b) *Definitions.*

(1) *Contractor's Laboratory Director* means the individual who has supervision over all or substantially all of the Contractor's operations at the Laboratory.

(2) *Intellectual Property* means patents, trademarks, copyrights, mask works, protected CRADA information, and other forms of comparable property rights protected by Federal Law and other foreign counterparts.

(3) *Cooperative Research and Development Agreement (CRADA)* means any agreement entered into between the Contractor as operator of the Laboratory, and one or more parties including at least one non-Federal party under which the Government, through its laboratory, provides personnel, services, facilities, equipment, intellectual property, or other resources with or without reimbursement (but not funds to non-Federal parties) and the non-Federal parties provide funds, personnel, services, facilities, equipment, intellectual property, or other resources toward the conduct of specified research or development efforts which are consistent with the missions of the Laboratory; except that such term does not include a procurement contract, grant, or cooperative agreement as those terms are used in sections 6303, 6304, and 6305 of Title 31 of the United States Code.

(4) *Joint Work Statement (JWS)* means a proposal for a CRADA prepared by the Contractor, signed by the Contractor's Laboratory Director or designee which describes the following:

(i) Purpose;

(ii) Scope of Work which delineates the rights and responsibilities of the Government, the Contractor and Third Parties, one of which must be a non-Federal party;

(iii) Schedule for the work; and

(iv) Cost and resource contributions of the parties associated with the work and the schedule.

(5) *Assignment* means any agreement by which the Contractor transfers ownership of Laboratory Intellectual Property, subject to the Government's retained rights.

(6) *Laboratory Biological Materials* means biological materials capable of replication or reproduction, such as plasmids, deoxyribonucleic acid molecules, ribonucleic acid molecules, living organisms of any sort and their progeny, including viruses, prokaryote and eukaryote cell lines, transgenic plants and animals, and any derivatives or modifications thereof or products produced through their use or associated biological products, made under this contract by Laboratory employees or through the use of Laboratory research facilities.

(7) *Laboratory Tangible Research Product* means tangible material results of research which

(i) are provided to permit replication, reproduction, evaluation or confirmation of the research effort, or to

evaluate its potential commercial utility;

(ii) are not materials generally commercially available; and

(iii) were made under this contract by Laboratory employees or through the use of Laboratory research facilities.

(8) *Bailment* means any agreement in which the Contractor permits the commercial or non-commercial transfer of custody, access or use of Laboratory Biological Materials or Laboratory Tangible Research Product for a specified purpose of technology transfer or research and development, including without limitation evaluation, and without transferring ownership to the bailee.

(c) *Allowable Costs.*

(1) The Contractor shall establish and carry out its technology transfer efforts through appropriate organizational elements consistent with the requirements for an Office of Research and Technology Applications (ORTA) pursuant to paragraphs (b) and (c) of Section 11 of the Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1980, as amended (15 U.S.C. 3710). The costs associated with the conduct of technology transfer through the ORTA including activities associated with obtaining, maintaining, licensing, and assigning Intellectual Property rights, increasing the potential for the transfer of technology, and the widespread notice of technology transfer opportunities, shall be deemed allowable provided that such costs meet the other requirements of the allowable costs provisions of this Contract. In addition to any separately designated funds, these costs in any fiscal year shall not exceed an amount equal to 0.5 percent of the operating funds included in the Federal research and development budget (including Work For Others) of the Laboratory for that fiscal year without written approval of the contracting officer.

(2) The Contractor's participation in litigation to enforce or defend Intellectual Property claims incurred in its technology transfer efforts shall be as provided in the clause entitled "Insurance-Litigation and Claims" of this contract.

(d) *Conflicts of Interest-Technology Transfer.* The Contractor shall have implementing procedures that seek to avoid employee and organizational conflicts of interest, or the appearance of conflicts of interest, in the conduct of its technology transfer activities. These procedures shall apply to other persons participating in Laboratory research or related technology transfer activities. Such implementing procedures shall be provided to the contracting officer for review and approval within sixty (60) days after execution of this contract. The contracting officer shall have thirty (30) days thereafter to approve or require specific changes to such procedures. Such implementing procedures shall include procedures to:

(1) Inform employees of and require conformance with standards of conduct and integrity in connection with the CRADA activity in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (n)(5) of this clause;

(2) Review and approve employee activities so as to avoid conflicts of interest arising from commercial utilization activities relating to Contractor-developed Intellectual Property;

(3) Conduct work performed using royalties so as to avoid interference with or adverse effects on ongoing DOE projects and programs;

(4) Conduct activities relating to commercial utilization of Contractor-developed Intellectual Property so as to avoid interference with or adverse effects on user facility or WFO activities of the Contractor;

(5) Conduct DOE-funded projects and programs so as to avoid the appearance of conflicts of interest or actual conflicts of interest with non-Government funded work;

(6) Notify the contracting officer with respect to any new work to be performed or proposed to be performed under the Contract for DOE or other Federal agencies where the new work or proposal involves Intellectual Property in which the Contractor has obtained or intends to request or elect title;

(7) Except as provided elsewhere in this Contract, obtain the approval of the contracting officer for any licensing of or assignment of title to Intellectual Property rights by the Contractor to any business or corporate affiliate of the

Contractor;

(8) Obtain the approval of the contracting officer prior to any assignment, exclusive licensing, or option for exclusive licensing, of Intellectual Property to any individual who has been a Laboratory employee within the previous two years or to the company in which the individual is a principal; and

(9) Notify non-Federal sponsors of WFO activities, or non-Federal users of user facilities, of any relevant Intellectual Property interest of the Contractor prior to execution of WFOs or user agreements.

(10) Notify DOE prior to evaluating a proposal by a third party or DOE, when the subject matter of the proposal involves an elected or waived subject invention under this contract or one in which the Contractor intends to elect to retain title under this contract.

(e) *Fairness of Opportunity.* In conducting its technology transfer activities, the Contractor shall prepare procedures and take all reasonable measures to ensure widespread notice of availability of technologies suited for transfer and opportunities for exclusive licensing and joint research arrangements. The requirement to widely disseminate the availability of technology transfer opportunities does not apply to a specific application originated outside of the Laboratory and by entities other than the Contractor.

(f) *U.S. Industrial Competitiveness.*

(1) In the interest of enhancing U.S. Industrial Competitiveness, the Contractor shall, in its licensing and assignments of Intellectual Property, give preference in such a manner as to enhance the accrual of economic and technological benefits to the U.S. domestic economy. The Contractor shall consider the following factors in all of its licensing and assignment decisions involving Laboratory intellectual property where the Laboratory obtains rights during the course of the Contractor's operation of the Laboratory under this contract:

(i) whether any resulting design and development will be performed in the United States and whether resulting products, embodying parts, including components thereof, will be substantially manufactured in the United States; or

(ii)

(A) whether the proposed licensee or assignee has a business unit located in the United States and whether significant economic and technical benefits will flow to the United States as a result of the license or assignment agreement; and

(B) in licensing any entity subject to the control of a foreign company or government, whether such foreign government permits United States agencies, organizations or other persons to enter into cooperative research and development agreements and licensing agreements, and has policies to protect United States Intellectual Property rights.

(2) If the Contractor determines that neither of the conditions in paragraphs (f)(1)(i) or (ii) of this clause are likely to be fulfilled, the Contractor, prior to entering into such an agreement, must obtain the approval of the contracting officer. The contracting officer shall act on any such requests for approval within thirty (30) days.

(3) The Contractor agrees to be bound by the provisions of [35 U.S.C. 204](#) (Preference for United States industry).

(g) *Indemnity-Product Liability.* In entering into written technology transfer agreements, including but not limited to, research and development agreements, licenses, assignments and CRADAs, the Contractor agrees to include in such agreements a requirement that the U.S. Government and the Contractor, except for any negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, be indemnified for all damages, costs, and expenses, including attorneys' fees, arising from personal injury or property damage occurring as a result of the making, using or selling of a product, process or service by or on behalf of the Participant, its assignees or licensees which was derived from the work performed under the agreement. The Contractor shall identify and obtain the approval of the contracting officer for any proposed exceptions to this requirement such as where State or local law expressly prohibit the Participant from providing indemnification or where the research results will be placed in the public domain.

(h) *Disposition of Income.*

(1) Royalties or other income earned or retained by the Contractor as a result of performance of authorized technology transfer activities herein shall be used by the Contractor for scientific research, development, technology transfer, and education at the Laboratory, consistent with the research and development mission and objectives of the Laboratory and subject to Section 12(b)(5) of the Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1980, as amended (15 U.S.C. 3710a(b)(5)) and Chapter 38 of the Patent Laws (35 U.S.C. 200 *et seq.*) as amended through the effective date of this contract award or modification. If the net amounts of such royalties and income received from patent licensing after payment of patenting costs, licensing costs, payments to inventors and other expenses incidental to the administration of Subject Inventions during any fiscal year exceed 5 percent of the Laboratory's budget for that fiscal year, 75 percent of such excess amounts shall be paid to the Treasury of the United States, and the remaining amount of such excess shall be used by the Contractor for the purposes as described above in this paragraph. Any inventions arising out of such scientific research and development activities shall be deemed to be Subject Inventions under the Contract.

(2) The Contractor shall include as a part of its annual Laboratory Institutional Plan or other such annual document a plan setting out those uses to which royalties and other income received as a result of performance of authorized technology transfer activities herein will be applied at the Laboratory, and at the end of the year, provide a separate accounting for how the funds were actually used. Under no circumstances shall these royalties and income be used for an illegal augmentation of funds furnished by the U.S. Government.

(3) The Contractor shall establish subject to the approval of the contracting officer a policy for making awards or sharing of royalties with Contractor employees, other coinventors and coauthors, including Federal employee coinventors when deemed appropriate by the contracting officer.

(i) *Transfer to successor contractor.* In the event of termination or upon the expiration of this Contract, any unexpended balance of income received for use at the Laboratory shall be transferred, at the contracting officer's request, to a successor contractor, or in the absence of a successor contractor, to such other entity as designated by the contracting officer. The Contractor shall transfer title, as one package, to the extent the Contractor retains title, in all patents and patent applications, licenses, accounts containing royalty revenues from such license agreements, including equity positions in third party entities, and other Intellectual Property rights which arose at the Laboratory, to the successor contractor or to the Government as directed by the contracting officer.

(j) *Technology transfer affecting the national security.*

(1) The Contractor shall notify and obtain the approval of the contracting officer, prior to entering into any technology transfer arrangement, when such technology or any part of such technology is classified or sensitive under Section 148 of the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 2168). Such notification shall include sufficient information to enable DOE to determine the extent that commercialization of such technology would enhance or diminish security interests of the United States, or diminish communications within DOE's nuclear weapon production complex. DOE shall use its best efforts to complete its determination within sixty (60) days of the Contractor's notification, and provision of any supporting information, and DOE shall promptly notify the Contractor as to whether the technology is transferable.

(2) The Contractor shall include in all of its technology transfer agreements with third parties, including, but not limited to, CRADAs, licensing agreements and assignments, notice to such third parties that the export of goods and/or Technical Data from the United States may require some form of export control license or other authority from the U.S. Government and that failure to obtain such export control license may result in criminal liability under U.S. laws.

(3) For other than fundamental research as defined in National Security Decision Directive 189, the Contractor is responsible to conduct internal export control reviews and assure that technology is transferred in accordance with applicable law.

(k) *Records.* The Contractor shall maintain records of its technology transfer activities in a manner and to the extent satisfactory to the DOE and specifically including, but not limited to, the licensing agreements, assignments and the records required to implement the requirements of paragraphs (e), (f), and (h) of this clause and shall provide reports to the contracting officer to enable DOE to maintain the reporting requirements of Section 12(c)(6) of the Stevenson-Wydler

Technology Innovation Act of 1980, as amended (15 U.S.C. 3710a(c)(6)). Such reports shall be made annually in a format to be agreed upon between the Contractor and DOE and in such a format which will serve to adequately inform DOE of the Contractor's technology transfer activities while protecting any data not subject to disclosure under the Rights in Technical Data clause and paragraph (n) of this clause. Such records shall be made available in accordance with the clauses of this Contract pertaining to inspection, audit and examination of records.

(l) *Reports to Congress.* To facilitate DOE's reporting to Congress, the Contractor is required to submit annually to DOE a technology transfer plan for conducting its technology transfer function for the upcoming year, including plans for securing Intellectual Property rights in Laboratory innovations with commercial promise and plans for managing such innovations so as to benefit the competitiveness of United States industry. This plan shall be provided to the contracting officer on or before October 1st of each year.

(m) *Oversight and appraisal.* The Contractor is responsible for developing and implementing effective internal controls for all technology transfer activities consistent with the audit and record requirements of this Contract. Laboratory Contractor performance in implementing the technology transfer mission and the effectiveness of the Contractor's procedures will be evaluated by the contracting officer as part of the annual appraisal process, with input from the cognizant Secretarial Officer or program office.

(n) *Technology transfer through cooperative research and development agreements.* Upon approval of the contracting officer and as provided in a DOE approved Joint Work Statement (JWS), the Laboratory Director, or designee, may enter into CRADAs on behalf of the DOE subject to the requirements set forth in this paragraph.

(1) *Review and approval of CRADAs.*

(i) Except as otherwise directed in writing by the contracting officer, each JWS shall be submitted to the contracting officer for approval. The Contractor's Laboratory Director or designee shall provide a program mission impact statement and shall include an impact statement regarding related Intellectual Property rights known by the Contractor to be owned by the Government to assist the contracting officer in the approval determination.

(ii) The Contractor shall also include (specific to the proposed CRADA), a statement of compliance with the Fairness of Opportunity requirements of paragraph (e) of this clause.

(iii) Within thirty (30) days after submission of a JWS or proposed CRADA, the contracting officer shall approve, disapprove or request modification to the JWS or CRADA. The contracting officer shall provide a written explanation to the Contractor's Laboratory Director or designee of any disapproval or requirement for modification of a JWS or proposed CRADA.

(iv) Except as otherwise directed in writing by the contracting officer, the Contractor shall not enter into, or begin work under, a CRADA until approval of the CRADA has been granted by the contracting officer. The Contractor may submit its proposed CRADA to the contracting officer at the time of submitting its proposed JWS or any time thereafter.

(2) *Selection of participants.* The Contractor's Laboratory Director or designee in deciding what CRADA to enter into shall:

(i) Give special consideration to small business firms, and consortia involving small business firms;

(ii) Give preference to business units located in the United States which agree that products or processes embodying Intellectual Property will be substantially manufactured or practiced in the United States and, in the case of any industrial organization or other person subject to the control of a foreign company or government, take into consideration whether or not such foreign government permits United States agencies, organizations, or other persons to enter into cooperative research and development agreements and licensing agreements;

(iii) Provide Fairness of Opportunity in accordance with the requirements of paragraph (e) of this clause; and

(iv) Give consideration to the Conflicts of Interest requirements of paragraph (d) of this clause.

(3) *Withholding of data.*

(i) Data that is first produced as a result of research and development activities conducted under a CRADA and that would be a trade secret or commercial or financial data that would be privileged or confidential, if such data had been obtained from a non-Federal third party, may be protected from disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act as provided in the Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1980, as amended (15 U.S.C. 3710a(c)(7)) for a period as agreed in the CRADA of up to five (5) years from the time the data is first produced. The DOE shall cooperate with the Contractor in protecting such data.

(ii) Unless otherwise expressly approved by the contracting officer in advance for a specific CRADA, the Contractor agrees, at the request of the contracting officer, to transmit such data to other DOE facilities for use by DOE or its Contractors by or on behalf of the Government. When data protected pursuant to paragraph (n)(3)(i) of this clause is so transferred, the Contractor shall clearly mark the data with a legend setting out the restrictions against private use and further dissemination, along with the expiration date of such restrictions.

(iii) In addition to its authority to license Intellectual Property, the Contractor may enter into licensing agreements with third parties for data developed by the Contractor under a CRADA subject to other provisions of this Contract. However, the Contractor shall neither use the protection against dissemination nor the licensing of data as an alternative to the submittal of invention disclosures which include data protected pursuant to paragraph (n)(3)(i) of this clause.

(4) *Work for others and user facility programs.*

(i) WFO and User Facility Agreements (UFAs) are not CRADAs and will be available for use by the Contractor in addition to CRADAs for achieving utilization of employee expertise and unique facilities for maximizing technology transfer. The Contractor agrees form prospective CRADA participants, which are intending to substantially pay full cost recovery for the effort under a proposed CRADA, of the availability of alternative forms of agreements, *i.e.*, WFO and UFA, and of the Class Patent Waiver provisions associated therewith.

(ii) Where the Contractor believes that the transfer of technology to the U.S. domestic economy will benefit from, or other equity considerations dictate, an arrangement other than the Class Waiver of patent rights to the sponsor in WFO and UFAs, a request may be made to the contracting officer for an exception to the Class Waivers.

(iii) Rights to inventions made under agreements other than funding agreements with third parties shall be governed by the appropriate provisions incorporated, with DOE approval, in such agreements, and the provisions in such agreements take precedence over any disposition of rights contained in this Contract. Disposition of rights under any such agreement shall be in accordance with any DOE class waiver (including Work for Others and User Class Waivers) or individually negotiated waiver which applies to the agreement.

(5) *Conflicts of interest.*

(i) Except as provided in paragraph (n)(5)(iii) of this clause, the Contractor shall assure that no employee of the Contractor shall have a substantial role (including an advisory role) in the preparation, negotiation, or approval of a CRADA, if, to such employee's knowledge:

(A) Such employee, or the spouse, child, parent, sibling, or partner of such employee, or an organization (other than the Contractor) in which such employee serves as an officer, director, trustee, partner, or employee-

(I) holds financial interest in any entity, other than the Contractor, that has a substantial interest in the preparation, negotiation, or approval of the CRADA;

(2) receives a gift or gratuity from any entity, other than the Contractor, that has a substantial interest in the preparation, negotiation, or approval of the CRADA; or

(B) A financial interest in any entity, other than the Contractor, that has a substantial interest in the preparation, negotiation, or approval of the CRADA, is held by any person or organization with whom such employee is negotiating or has any arrangement concerning prospective employment.

(ii) The Contractor shall require that each employee of the Contractor who has a substantial role (including an advisory role) in the preparation, negotiation, or approval of a CRADA certify through the Contractor to the contracting officer that the circumstances described in paragraph (n)(5)(i) of this clause do not apply to that employee.

(iii) The requirements of paragraphs (n)(5)(i) and (n)(5)(ii) of this clause shall not apply in a case where the contracting officer is advised by the Contractor in advance of the participation of an employee described in those paragraphs in the preparation, negotiation or approval of a CRADA of the nature of and extent of any financial interest described in paragraph (n)(5)(i) of this clause, and the contracting officer determines that such financial interest is not so substantial as to be considered likely to affect the integrity of the Contractor employee's participation in the process of preparing, negotiating, or approving the CRADA.

(o) *Technology transfer in other cost-sharing agreements.* In conducting research and development activities in cost-shared agreements not covered by paragraph (n) of this clause, the Contractor, with prior written permission of the contracting officer, may provide for the withholding of data produced thereunder in accordance with the applicable provisions of paragraph (n)(3) of this clause.

(End of clause)

Alternate I (AUG 2002). As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.2770-4\(b\)](#), add the following definition under paragraph (b) and the following new paragraph (p):

(b)(8) *Privately funded technology transfer* means the prosecuting, maintaining, licensing, and marketing of inventions which are not owned by the Government (and not related to CRADAs) when such activities are conducted entirely without the use of Government funds.

(p) *Technology partnership ombudsman.* (1) The Contractor agrees to establish a position to be known as “Technology Partnership Ombudsman,” to help resolve complaints from outside organizations regarding the policies and actions of the contractor with respect to technology partnerships (including CRADAs), patents owned by the contractor for inventions made at the laboratory, and technology licensing.

(2) The Ombudsman shall be a senior official of the Contactor's laboratory staff, who is not involved in day-to-day technology partnerships, patents or technology licensing, or, if appointed from outside the laboratory or facility, shall function as such senior official.

(3) The duties of the Technology Partnership Ombudsman shall include:

(i) Serving as the focal point for assisting the public and industry in resolving complaints and disputes with the laboratory or facility regarding technology partnerships, patents, and technology licensing;

(ii) Promoting the use of collaborative alternative dispute resolution techniques such as mediation to facilitate the speedy and low cost resolution of complaints and disputes, when appropriate; and

(iii) Submitting a quarterly report, in a format provided by DOE, to the Secretary of Energy, the Administrator for Nuclear Security, the Director of the DOE Office of Dispute Resolution, and the Contracting Officer concerning the number and nature of complaints and disputes raised, along with the Ombudsman's assessment of their resolution, consistent with the protection of confidential and sensitive information.

(q) Nothing in paragraphs (c) Allowable Costs, (e) Fairness of Opportunity, (f) U.S. Industrial Competitiveness, (g) Indemnity-Product Liability, (h) Disposition of Income, and (i) Transfer to Successor Contractor of this clause are intended to apply to the contractor's privately funded technology transfer activities if such privately funded activities are addressed elsewhere in the contract.

Alternate II (DEC 2000). As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.2770-4\(c\)](#), the contracting officer shall substitute the phrase “weapon production facility” wherever the word “laboratory” appears in the clause.

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [67 FR 48570](#), July 25, 2002]

§970.5227-4 Authorization and consent

Insert the following clause in solicitations and contracts in accordance with 970.2702-1:

Authorization and Consent (AUG 2002)

(a) The Government authorizes and consents to all use and manufacture of any invention described in and covered by a United States patent in the performance of this contract or any subcontract at any tier.

(b) If the Contractor is sued for copyright infringement or anticipates the filing of such a lawsuit, the Contractor may request authorization and consent to copy a copyrighted work from the contracting officer. Programmatic necessity is a major consideration for DOE in determining whether to grant such request.

(c)

(1) The Contractor agrees to include, and require inclusion of, the Authorization and Consent clause at 52.227-1, without Alternate 1, but suitably modified to identify the parties, in all subcontracts expected to exceed \$100,000 at any tier for supplies or services, including construction, architect-engineer services, and materials, supplies, models, samples, and design or testing services.

(2) The Contractor agrees to include, and require inclusion of, paragraph (a) of this Authorization and Consent clause, suitably modified to identify the parties, in all subcontracts at any tier for research and development activities expected to exceed \$100,000.

(3) Omission of an authorization and consent clause from any subcontract, including those valued less than \$100,000 does not affect this authorization and consent.

(End of clause)

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [67 FR 48570](#), July 25, 2002]

§970.5227-5 Notice and assistance regarding patent and copyright infringement

Insert the following clause in solicitations and contracts in accordance with 970.2702-2:

Notice and Assistance Regarding Patent and Copyright Infringement (DEC 2000)

(a) The Contractor shall report to the Contracting Officer promptly and in reasonable written detail, each notice or claim of patent or copyright infringement based on the performance of this contract of which the Contractor has knowledge.

(b) If any person files a claim or suit against the Government on account of any alleged patent or copyright infringement arising out of the performance of this contract or out of the use of any supplies furnished or work or services performed hereunder, the Contractor shall furnish to the Government, when requested by the Contracting Officer, all evidence and information in possession of the Contractor pertaining to such suit or claim. Except where the Contractor has agreed to indemnify the Government, the Contractor shall furnish such evidence and information at the expense of the Government.

(c) The Contractor agrees to include, and require inclusion of, this clause suitably modified to identify the parties, in all subcontracts at any tier expected to exceed \$100,000.

(End of clause)

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [67 FR 48570](#), July 25, 2002]

§970.5227-6 Patent indemnity-subcontracts

Insert the following clause in solicitations and contracts in accordance with 970.2702-3:

Patent Indemnity-Subcontracts (DEC 2000)

Except as otherwise authorized by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall obtain indemnification of the Government and its officers, agents, and employees against liability, including costs, for infringement of any United States patent (except a patent issued upon an application that is now or may hereafter be withheld from issue pursuant to a secrecy order by the Government) from Contractor's subcontractors for any contract work subcontracted in accordance with FAR [48 CFR 52.227-3](#).

(End of clause)

§970.5227-7 Royalty information

Insert the following provision in solicitations in accordance with 970.2702-4:

Royalty Information (DEC 2000)

(a) *Cost or charges for royalties.* If the response to this solicitation contains costs or charges for royalties totaling more than \$250, the following information shall be included in the response relating to each separate item of royalty or license fee:

(1) Name and address of licensor;

(2) Date of license agreement;

(3) Patent numbers, patent application serial numbers, or other basis on which the royalty is payable;

(4) Brief description, including any part or model numbers of each contract item or component on which the royalty is payable;

- (5) Percentage or dollar rate of royalty per unit;
- (6) Unit price of contract item;
- (7) Number of units; and
- (8) Total dollar amount of royalties.

(b) Copies of current licenses. In addition, if specifically requested by the Contracting Officer before execution of the contract, the offeror shall furnish a copy of the current license agreement and an identification of applicable claims of specific patents or other basis upon which the royalty may be payable.

(End of provision)

§970.5227-8 Refund of royalties

Insert the following clause in solicitations and contracts in accordance with 970.2702-4:

Refund of Royalties (AUG 2002)

(a) During performance of this Contract, if any royalties are proposed to be charged to the Government as costs under this Contract, the Contractor agrees to submit for approval of the Contracting Officer, prior to the execution of any license, the following information relating to each separate item of royalty:

- (1) Name and address of licensor;
- (2) Patent numbers, patent application serial numbers, or other basis on which the royalty is payable;
- (3) Brief description, including any part or model numbers of each contract item or component on which the royalty is payable;
- (4) Percentage or dollar rate of royalty per unit;
- (5) Unit price of contract item;
- (6) Number of units;
- (7) Total dollar amount of royalties; and
- (8) A copy of the proposed license agreement.

(b) If specifically requested by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall furnish a copy of any license agreement entered into prior to the effective date of this clause and an identification of applicable claims of specific patents or other basis upon which royalties are payable.

(c) The term "royalties" as used in this clause refers to any costs or charges in the nature of royalties, license fees, patent or license amortization costs, or the like, for the use of or for rights in patents and patent applications that are used in the performance of this contract or any subcontract hereunder.

(d) The Contractor shall furnish to the Contracting Officer, annually upon request, a statement of royalties paid or required to be paid in connection with performing this Contract and subcontracts hereunder.

(e) For royalty payments under licenses entered into after the effective date of this Contract, costs incurred for royalties proposed under this paragraph shall be allowable only to the extent that such royalties are approved by the Contracting Officer. If the Contracting Officer determines that existing or proposed royalty payments are inappropriate, any payments subsequent to such determination shall be allowable only to the extent approved by the Contracting Officer.

(f) Regardless of prior DOE approval of any individual payments or royalties, DOE may contest at any time the enforceability, validity, scope of, or title to a patent for which the Contractor makes a royalty or other payment.

(g) If at any time within 3 years after final payment under this contract, the Contractor for any reason is relieved in whole or in part from the payment of any royalties to which this clause applies, the Contractor shall promptly notify the Contracting Officer of that fact and shall promptly reimburse the Government for any refunds received or royalties paid after having received notice of such relief.

(h) The Contractor agrees to include, and require inclusion of, this clause, including this paragraph (h), suitably modified to identify the parties in any subcontract at any tier in which the amount of royalties reported during negotiation of the subcontract exceeds \$250.

(End of clause)

[65 FR 81009, Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at 67 FR 48570, July 25, 2002]

§970.5227-9 Notice of right to request patent waiver

Insert the following provision in solicitations in accordance with 970.2704-6:

Notice of Right To Request Patent Waiver (DEC 2000)

Offerors have the right to request a waiver of all or any part of the rights of the United States in inventions conceived or first actually reduced to practice in performance of the contract, in advance of or within 30 days after the effective date of contracting. If such advance waiver is not requested or the request is denied, the Contractor has a continuing right under the contract to request a waiver of the rights of the Government in identified inventions, *i.e.*, individual inventions conceived or first actually reduced to practice in performance of the contract. Contractors that are domestic small businesses and domestic nonprofit organizations may not need a waiver and will have included in their contracts a patent clause reflecting their right to elect title to subject inventions pursuant to the Bayh-Dole Act (35 U.S.C. 200 *et seq.*).

(End of provision)

§970.5227-10 Patent rights-management and operating contracts, nonprofit organization or small business firm contractor

As prescribed in 970.2703-1(b)(2), insert the following clause:

Patent Rights-Management and Operating Contracts, Nonprofit Organization or Small Business Firm Contractor (DEC 2000)

(a) *Definitions.*

(1) *DOE licensing regulations* means the Department of Energy patent licensing regulations at 10 CFR Part 781.

(2) *Exceptional circumstance subject invention* means any subject invention in a technical field or related to a task determined by the Department of Energy to be subject to an exceptional circumstance under [35 U.S.C. 202\(a\)\(ii\)](#) and in accordance with [37 CFR 401.3\(e\)](#).

(3) *Invention* means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable or otherwise protectable under Title 35 of the United States Code, or any novel variety of plant which is or may be protected under the Plant Variety Protection Act ([7 U.S.C. 2321 et seq.](#)).

(4) *Made* when used in relation to any invention means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention.

(5) *Nonprofit organization* means a university or other institution of higher education or an organization of the type described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954 ([26 U.S.C. 501\(c\)](#)) and exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of the Internal Revenue Code ([26 U.S.C. 501\(a\)](#)) or any nonprofit scientific or educational organization qualified under a state nonprofit organization statute.

(6) *Patent Counsel* means the Department of Energy (DOE) Patent Counsel assisting the DOE contracting activity.

(7) *Practical application* means to manufacture, in the case of a composition or product; to practice, in the case of a process or method; or to operate, in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are, to the extent permitted by law or Government regulations, available to the public on reasonable terms.

(8) *Small business firm* means a small business concern as defined at section 2 of Pub. L. 85-536 ([15 U.S.C. 632](#)) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration. For the purpose of this clause, the size standards for small business concerns involved in Government procurement and subcontracting at [13 CFR 121.3-8](#) and [13 CFR 121.3-12](#), respectively, are used.

(9) *Subject Invention* means any invention of the contractor conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the performance of work under this contract, provided that in the case of a variety of plant, the date of determination (as defined in section 41(d) of the Plant Variety Protection Act, [7 U.S.C. 2401\(d\)](#)) shall also occur during the period of contract performance.

(b) *Allocation of Principal Rights.*

(1) *Retention of title by the Contractor.* Except for exceptional circumstance subject inventions, the contractor may retain the entire right, title, and interest throughout the world to each subject invention subject to the provisions of this clause and [35 U.S.C. 203](#). With respect to any subject invention in which the Contractor retains title, the Federal government shall have a nonexclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license to practice or have practiced for or on behalf of the United States the subject invention throughout the world.

(2) *Exceptional circumstance subject inventions.* Except to the extent that rights are retained by the Contractor in a determination of exceptional circumstances or granted to a contractor through a determination of greater rights in accordance with subparagraph (b)(4) of this clause, the Contractor does not have a right to retain title to any exceptional circumstance subject inventions and agrees to assign to the Government the entire right, title, and interest, throughout the world, in and to any exceptional circumstance subject inventions.

(i) Inventions within or relating to the following fields of technology are exceptional circumstance subject inventions:

(A) Uranium enrichment technology;

(B) Storage and disposal of civilian high-level nuclear waste and spent fuel technology; and

(C) National security technologies classified or sensitive under Section 148 of the Atomic Energy Act ([42 U.S.C. 2168](#)).

(ii) Inventions made under any agreement, contract or subcontract related to the following are exceptional circumstance subject inventions:

(A) DOE Steel Initiative and Metals Initiative;

(B) U.S. Advanced Battery Consortium; and

(C) Any funding agreement which is funded in part by the Electric Power Research Institute (EPRI) or the Gas Research Institute (GRI).

(iii) DOE reserves the right to unilaterally amend this contract to modify, by deletion or insertion, technical fields, tasks, or other classifications for the purpose of determining DOE exceptional circumstance subject inventions.

(3) *Treaties and international agreements.* Any rights acquired by the Contractor in subject inventions are subject to any disposition of right, title, or interest in or to subject inventions provided for in treaties or international agreements identified at Appendix [*Insert Reference*] to this contract. DOE reserves the right to unilaterally amend this contract to identify specific treaties or international agreements entered into or to be entered into by the Government after the effective date of this contract and to effectuate those license or other rights which are necessary for the Government to meet its obligations to foreign governments, their nationals and international organizations under such treaties or international agreements with respect to subject inventions made after the date of the amendment.

(4) *Contractor request for greater rights in exceptional circumstance subject inventions.* The Contractor may request rights greater than allowed by the exceptional circumstance determination in an exceptional circumstance subject invention by submitting such a request in writing to Patent Counsel at the time the exceptional circumstance subject invention is disclosed to DOE or within eight (8) months after conception or first actual reduction to practice of the exceptional circumstance subject invention, whichever occurs first, unless a longer period is authorized in writing by the Patent Counsel for good cause shown in writing by the Contractor. DOE may, in its discretion, grant or refuse to grant such a request by the Contractor.

(5) *Contractor employee-inventor rights.* If the Contractor does not elect to retain title to a subject invention or does not request greater rights in an exceptional circumstance subject invention, a Contractor employee-inventor, after consultation with the Contractor and with written authorization from the Contractor in accordance with [10 CFR 784.9\(b\)\(4\)](#), may request greater rights, including title, in the subject invention or the exceptional circumstance invention from DOE, and DOE may, in its discretion, grant or refuse to grant such a request by the Contractor employee-inventor.

(6) *Government assignment of rights in Government employees' subject inventions.* If a Government employee is a joint inventor of a subject invention or of an exceptional circumstance subject invention to which the Contractor has rights, the Government may assign or refuse to assign to the Contractor any rights in the subject invention or exceptional circumstance subject invention acquired by the Government from the Government employee, in accordance with [48 CFR 27.304-1\(d\)](#). The rights assigned to the Contractor are subject to any provision of this clause that is applicable to subject inventions in which the Contractor retains title, including reservation by the Government of a nonexclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license, except that the Contractor shall file its initial patent application claiming the subject invention or exceptional circumstance invention within one (1) year after the assignment of such rights. The Contractor shall share royalties collected for the manufacture, use or sale of the subject invention with the Government employee.

(c) *Subject invention disclosure, election of title and filing of patent application by contractor* - (1) *Subject invention disclosure.* The contractor will disclose each subject invention to the Patent Counsel within two months after the inventor discloses it in writing to contractor personnel responsible for patent matters. The disclosure to the agency shall be in the form of a written report and shall identify the contract under which the invention was made and the inventor(s) and all sources of funding by B&R code for the invention. It shall be sufficiently complete in technical detail to convey a clear understanding to the extent known at the time of the disclosure, of the nature, purpose, operation, and the physical, chemical, biological or electrical characteristics of the invention. The disclosure shall also identify any publication, on sale or public use of the invention and whether a manuscript describing the invention has been submitted for publication and, if so, whether it has been accepted for publication at the time of disclosure. The disclosure shall include a written statement as to whether the invention falls within an exceptional circumstance field. DOE will make a determination and advise the Contractor within 30 days of receipt of an invention disclosure as to whether the invention is an exceptional circumstance subject invention. In addition, after disclosure to the Patent Counsel, the Contractor will promptly notify the agency of the acceptance of any manuscript describing the invention for publication or of any on sale or public use planned by the contractor. The Contractor shall obtain approval from Patent Counsel prior to any release or publication of information concerning any nonelectable subject invention such as an exceptional circumstance subject invention or any subject invention related to a treaty or international agreement.

(2) *Election by the Contractor.* Except as provided in paragraph (b)(2) of this clause, the Contractor will elect in writing whether or not to retain title to any such invention by notifying the Federal agency within two years of disclosure to the Federal agency. However, in any case where publication, on sale or public use has initiated the one year statutory period wherein valid patent protection can still be obtained in the United States, the period for election of title may be shortened by the agency to a date that is no more than 60 days prior to the end of the statutory period.

(3) *Filing of patent applications by the Contractor.* The Contractor will file its initial patent application on a subject invention to which it elects to retain title within one year after election of title or, if earlier, or prior to the end of any 1-year statutory period wherein valid patent protection can be obtained in the United States after a publication, on sale, or public use. The Contractor will file patent applications in additional countries or international patent offices within either ten months of the corresponding initial patent application or six months from the date permission is granted by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to file foreign patent applications where such filing has been prohibited by a Secrecy Order.

(4) *Contractor's request for an extension of time.* Requests for an extension of the time for disclosure, election, and filing under subparagraphs (c)(1), (2) and (3) may, at the discretion of Patent Counsel, be granted.

(5) *Publication approval.* During the course of the work under this contract, the Contractor or its employees may desire to release or publish information regarding scientific or technical developments conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under this contract. In order that public disclosure of such information will not adversely affect the patent interest of DOE or the Contractor, approval for release or publication shall be secured from the Contractor personnel responsible for patent matters prior to any such release or publication. Where DOE's approval of publication is requested, DOE's response to such requests for approval shall normally be provided within 90 days except in circumstances in which a domestic patent application must be filed in order to protect foreign rights. In the case involving foreign patent rights, DOE shall be granted an additional 180 days with which to respond to the request for approval, unless extended by mutual agreement.

(d) *Conditions when the Government may obtain title.* The Contractor will convey to the DOE, upon written request, title to any subject invention-

(1) If the Contractor fails to disclose or elect title to the subject invention within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this clause, or elects not to retain title; provided, that DOE may only request title within sixty (60) days after learning of the failure of the Contractor to disclose or to elect within the specified times.

(2) In those countries in which the Contractor fails to file a patent application within the times specified in subparagraph (c) of this clause; provided, however, that if the Contractor has filed a patent application in a country after the times specified in subparagraph (c) above, but prior to its receipt of the written request of the DOE, the Contractor shall continue to retain title in that country.

(3) In any country in which the Contractor decides not to continue the prosecution of any application for, to pay the maintenance fees on, or defend in a reexamination or opposition proceeding on, a patent on a subject invention.

(4) If the Contractor requests that DOE acquire title or rights from the Contractor in a subject invention to which the Contractor had initially retained title or rights, or in an exceptional circumstance subject invention to which the Contractor was granted greater rights, DOE may acquire such title or rights from the Contractor, or DOE may decide against acquiring such title or rights from the Contractor, at DOE's sole discretion.

(e) *Minimum rights of the Contractor and protection of the Contractor's right to file -(1) Request for a Contractor license.* The Contractor may request the right to reserve a revocable, nonexclusive, royalty-free license throughout the world in each subject invention to which the Government obtains title, except if the Contractor fails to disclose the invention within the times specified in paragraph (c) of this clause. DOE may grant or refuse to grant such a request by the Contractor. When DOE approves such reservation, the Contractor's license will normally extend to its domestic subsidiaries and affiliates, if any, within the corporate structure of which the Contractor is a party and includes the right to grant sublicenses of the same scope to the extent the Contractor was legally obligated to do so at the time the contract was awarded. The license is transferable only with the approval of DOE, except when transferred to the successor of that part of the contractor's business to which the invention pertains.

(2) *Revocation or modification of a Contractor license.* The Contractor's domestic license may be revoked or modified by

DOE to the extent necessary to achieve expeditious practical application of the subject invention pursuant to an application for an exclusive license submitted in accordance with applicable provisions at [37 CFR Part 404](#) and DOE licensing regulations at [10 CFR Part 781](#). This license will not be revoked in the field of use or the geographical areas in which the Contractor has achieved practical application and continues to make the benefits of the subject invention reasonably accessible to the public. The license in any foreign country may be revoked or modified at the discretion of DOE to the extent the Contractor, its licensees, or the domestic subsidiaries or affiliates have failed to achieve practical application of the subject invention in that foreign country.

(3) *Notice of revocation or modification of a Contractor license.* Before revocation or modification of the license, DOE will furnish the Contractor a written notice of its intention to revoke or modify the license, and the Contractor will be allowed thirty days (or such other time as may be authorized by DOE for good cause shown by the Contractor) after the notice to show cause why the license should not be revoked or modified. The Contractor has the right to appeal, in accordance with applicable regulations in [37 CFR part 404](#) and DOE licensing regulations at [10 CFR part 781](#) concerning the licensing of Government owned inventions, any decision concerning the revocation or modification of the license.

(f) *Contractor action to protect the Government's interest.* -(1) *Execution of delivery of title or license instruments.* The Contractor agrees to execute or to have executed, and promptly deliver to the Patent Counsel all instruments necessary to accomplish the following actions:

(i) establish or confirm the rights the Government has throughout the world in those subject inventions to which the Contractor elects to retain title, and

(ii) convey title to DOE when requested under subparagraphs (b) or paragraph (d) of this clause and to enable the Government to obtain patent protection throughout the world in that subject invention.

(2) *Contractor employee agreements.* The Contractor agrees to require, by written agreement, its employees, other than clerical and nontechnical employees, to disclose promptly in writing to Contractor personnel identified as responsible for the administration of patent matters and in a format suggested by the Contractor, each subject invention made under this contract in order that the Contractor can comply with the disclosure provisions of paragraph (c) of this clause, and to execute all papers necessary to file patent applications on subject inventions and to establish the Government's rights in the subject inventions. This disclosure format should require, as a minimum, the information required by subparagraph (c)(1) of this clause. The Contractor shall instruct such employees, through employee agreements or other suitable educational programs, on the importance of reporting inventions in sufficient time to permit the filing of patent applications prior to U.S. or foreign statutory bars.

(3) *Notification of discontinuation of patent protection.* The contractor will notify the Patent Counsel of any decision not to continue the prosecution of a patent application, pay maintenance fees, or defend in a reexamination or opposition proceeding on a patent, in any country, not less than thirty days before the expiration of the response period required by the relevant patent office.

(4) *Notification of Government rights.* The contractor agrees to include, within the specification of any United States patent applications and any patent issuing thereon covering a subject invention, the following statement, "This invention was made with government support under (identify the contract) awarded by (identify the Federal agency). The government has certain rights in the invention."

(5) *Invention identification procedures.* The Contractor shall establish and maintain active and effective procedures to ensure that subject inventions are promptly identified and timely disclosed and shall submit a written description of such procedures to the Contracting Officer so that the Contracting Officer may evaluate and determine their effectiveness.

(6) *Invention filing documentation.* If the Contractor files a domestic or foreign patent application claiming a subject invention, the Contractor shall promptly submit to Patent Counsel, upon request, the following information and documents:

(i) the filing date, serial number, title, and a copy of the patent application (including an English-language version if filed in a language other than English);

(ii) an executed and approved instrument fully confirmatory of all Government rights in the subject invention; and

(iii) the patent number, issue date, and a copy of any issued patent claiming the subject invention.

(7) *Duplication and disclosure of documents.* The Government may duplicate and disclose subject invention disclosures and all other reports and papers furnished or required to be furnished pursuant to this clause; provided, however, that any such duplication or disclosure by the Government is subject to the confidentiality provision at [35 U.S.C. 205](#) and [37 CFR Part 40](#).

(g) *Subcontracts* -(1) *Subcontractor subject inventions.* The Contractor shall not obtain rights in the subcontractor's subject inventions as part of the consideration for awarding a subcontract.

(2) *Inclusion of patent rights clause-non-profit organization or small business firm subcontractors.* Unless otherwise authorized or directed by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall include the patent rights clause at [48 CFR 952.227-11](#), suitably modified to identify the parties, in all subcontracts, at any tier, for experimental, developmental, demonstration or research work to be performed by a small business firm or domestic nonprofit organization, except subcontracts which are subject to exceptional circumstances in accordance with [35 U.S.C. 202](#) and subparagraph (b)(2) of this clause. The subcontractor retains all rights provided for the contractor in the patent rights clause at [48 CFR 952.227-11](#).

(3) *Inclusion of patent rights clause-subcontractors other than non-profit organizations and small business firms.* Except for the subcontracts described in subparagraph (g)(2) of this clause, the Contractor shall include the patent rights clause at [48 CFR 952.227-13](#), suitably modified to identify the parties, in any contract for experimental, developmental, demonstration or research work. For subcontracts subject to exceptional circumstances, the contractor must consult with DOE patent counsel with respect to the appropriate patent clause.

(4) *DOE and subcontractor contract.* With respect to subcontracts at any tier, DOE, the subcontractor, and the Contractor agree that the mutual obligations of the parties created by this clause constitute a contract between the subcontractor and DOE with respect to the matters covered by the clause; provided, however, that nothing in this paragraph is intended to confer any jurisdiction under the Contract Disputes Act in connection with proceedings under paragraph (j) of this clause.

(5) *Subcontractor refusal to accept terms of patent clause.* If a prospective subcontractor refuses to accept the terms of a patent rights clause, the Contractor shall promptly submit a written notice to the Contracting Officer stating the subcontractor's reasons for such a refusal, including any relevant information for expediting disposition of the matter, and the Contractor shall not proceed with the subcontract without the written authorization of the Contracting Officer.

(6) *Notification of award of subcontract.* Upon the award of any subcontract at any tier containing a patent rights clause, the Contractor shall promptly notify the Contracting Officer in writing and identify the subcontractor, the applicable patent rights clause, the work to be performed under the subcontract, and the dates of award and estimated completion. Upon request of the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall furnish a copy of a subcontract.

(7) *Identification of subcontractor subject inventions.* If the Contractor in the performance of this contract becomes aware of a subject invention made under a subcontract, the Contractor shall promptly notify Patent Counsel and identify the subject invention.

(h) *Reporting on utilization of subject inventions.* The Contractor agrees to submit to DOE on request, periodic reports, no more frequently than annually, on the utilization of a subject invention or on efforts at obtaining such utilization that are being made by the Contractor or its licensees or assignees. Such reports shall include information regarding the status of development, date of first commercial sale or use, gross royalties received by the Contractor, and such other data and information as DOE may reasonably specify. The Contractor also agrees to provide additional reports as may be requested by DOE in connection with any march-in proceeding undertaken by DOE in accordance with paragraph (j) of this clause. As required by [35 U.S.C. 202\(c\)\(5\)](#), DOE agrees it will not disclose such information to persons outside the Government without permission of the Contractor.

(i) *Preference for United States Industry.* Notwithstanding any other provision of this clause, the Contractor agrees that neither it nor any assignee will grant to any person the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the United States unless such person agrees that any product embodying the subject invention or produced through the use of the subject invention will be manufactured substantially in the United States. However, in individual cases, the requirement for such an agreement may be waived by DOE upon a showing by the Contractor or its assignee that reasonable but unsuccessful efforts have been made to grant licenses on similar terms to potential licensees that would be likely to manufacture substantially in the United States or that under the circumstances domestic manufacture is not commercially

feasible.

(j) *March-in Rights*. The Contractor agrees that, with respect to any subject invention in which it has acquired title, DOE has the right in accordance with the procedures in 37 CFR 401.6 and any DOE supplemental regulations to require the Contractor, an assignee or exclusive licensee of a subject invention to grant a nonexclusive, partially exclusive, or exclusive license in any field of use to a responsible applicant or applicants, upon terms that are reasonable under the circumstances, and, if the Contractor, assignee or exclusive licensee refuses such a request, DOE has the right to grant such a license itself if DOE determines that-

(1) Such action is necessary because the Contractor or assignee has not taken, or is not expected to take within a reasonable time, effective steps to achieve practical application of the subject invention in such field of use;

(2) Such action is necessary to alleviate health or safety needs which are not reasonably satisfied by the Contractor, assignee, or their licensees;

(3) Such action is necessary to meet requirements for public use specified by Federal regulations and such requirements are not reasonably satisfied by the Contractor, assignee, or licensees; or

(4) Such action is necessary because the agreement required by paragraph (i) of this clause has not been obtained or waived, or because a licensee of the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the United States is in breach of such agreement.

(k) *Special provisions for contracts with nonprofit organizations*. If the Contractor is a nonprofit organization, it agrees that-

(1) *DOE approval of assignment of rights*. Rights to a subject invention in the United States may not be assigned by the Contractor without the approval of DOE, except where such assignment is made to an organization which has as one of its primary functions the management of inventions; provided, that such assignee will be subject to the same provisions of this clause as the Contractor.

(2) *Small business firm licensees*. It will make efforts that are reasonable under the circumstances to attract licensees of subject inventions that are small business firms, and that it will give a preference to a small business firm when licensing a subject invention if the Contractor determines that the small business firm has a plan or proposal for marketing the invention which, if executed, is equally as likely to bring the invention to practical application as any plans or proposals from applicants that are not small business firms; provided, that the Contractor is also satisfied that the small business firm has the capability and resources to carry out its plan or proposal. The decision whether to give a preference in any specific case will be at the discretion of the Contractor. However, the Contractor agrees that the Secretary of Commerce may review the Contractor's licensing program and decisions regarding small business firm applicants, and the Contractor will negotiate changes to its licensing policies, procedures, or practices with the Secretary of Commerce when that Secretary's review discloses that the Contractor could take reasonable steps to more effectively implement the requirements of this subparagraph (k)(2).

(3) *Contractor licensing of subject inventions*. To the extent that it provides the most effective technology transfer, licensing of subject inventions shall be administered by Contractor employees on location at the facility.

(l) *Communications*. The Contractor shall direct any notification, disclosure or request provided for in this clause to the Patent Counsel assisting the DOE contracting activity.

(m) *Reports*.

(1) *Interim reports*. Upon DOE's request, the Contractor shall submit to DOE, no more frequently than annually, a list of subject inventions disclosed to DOE during a specified period, or a statement that no subject inventions were made during the specified period; and a list of subcontracts containing a patent clause and awarded by the Contractor during a specified period, or a statement that no such subcontracts were awarded during the specified period.

(2) *Final reports*. Upon DOE's request, the Contractor shall submit to DOE, prior to closeout of the contract, a list of all subject inventions disclosed during the performance period of the contract, or a statement that no subject inventions were

made during the contract performance period; and a list of all subcontracts containing a patent clause and awarded by the Contractor during the contract performance period, or a statement that no such subcontracts were awarded during the contract performance period.

(n) *Examination of Records Relating to Subject Inventions* -(1) *Contractor compliance*. Until the expiration of three (3) years after final payment under this contract, the Contracting Officer or any authorized representative may examine any books (including laboratory notebooks), records, documents, and other supporting data of the Contractor, which the Contracting Officer or authorized representative deems reasonably pertinent to the discovery or identification of subject inventions, including exceptional circumstance subject inventions, or to determine Contractor compliance with any requirement of this clause.

(2) *Unreported inventions*. If the Contracting Officer is aware of an invention that is not disclosed by the Contractor to DOE, and the Contracting Officer believes the unreported invention may be a subject invention, including exceptional circumstance subject inventions, DOE may require the Contractor to submit to DOE a disclosure of the invention for a determination of ownership rights.

(3) *Confidentiality*. Any examination of records under this paragraph is subject to appropriate conditions to protect the confidentiality of the information involved.

(4) *Power of inspection*. With respect to a subject invention for which the Contractor has responsibility for patent prosecution, the Contractor shall furnish the Government, upon request by DOE, an irrevocable power to inspect and make copies of a prosecution file for any patent application claiming the subject invention.

(o) *Facilities License*. In addition to the rights of the parties with respect to inventions or discoveries conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under this contract, the Contractor agrees to and does hereby grant to the Government an irrevocable, nonexclusive, paid-up license in and to any inventions or discoveries regardless of when conceived or actually reduced to practice or acquired by the Contractor at any time through completion of this contract and which are incorporated or embodied in the construction of the facility or which are utilized in the operation of the facility or which cover articles, materials, or product manufactured at the facility (1) to practice or have practiced by or for the Government at the facility, and (2) to transfer such license with the transfer of that facility. Notwithstanding the acceptance or exercise by the Government of these rights, the Government may contest at any time the enforceability, validity or scope of, or title to, any rights or patents herein licensed.

(p) *Atomic Energy*.

(1) *Pecuniary awards*. No claim for pecuniary award of compensation under the provisions of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, may be asserted with respect to any invention or discovery made or conceived in the course of or under this contract.

(2) *Patent agreements*. Except as otherwise authorized in writing by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall obtain patent agreements to effectuate the provisions of subparagraph (p)(1) of this clause from all persons who perform any part of the work under this contract, except nontechnical personnel, such as clerical employees and manual laborers.

(q) *Classified inventions* -(1) *Approval for filing a foreign patent application*. The Contractor shall not file or cause to be filed an application or registration for a patent disclosing a subject invention related to classified subject matter in any country other than the United States without first obtaining the written approval of the Contracting Officer.

(2) *Transmission of classified subject matter*. If in accordance with this clause the Contractor files a patent application in the United States disclosing a subject invention that is classified for reasons of security, the Contractor shall observe all applicable security regulations covering the transmission of classified subject matter. If the Contractor transmits a patent application disclosing a classified subject invention to the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO), the Contractor shall submit a separate letter to the USPTO identifying the contract or contracts by agency and agreement number that require security classification markings to be placed on the patent application.

(3) *Inclusion of clause in subcontracts*. The Contractor agrees to include the substance of this clause in subcontracts at any tier that cover or are likely to cover subject matter classified for reasons of security.

(r) *Patent functions.* Upon the written request of the Contracting Officer or Patent Counsel, the Contractor agrees to make reasonable efforts to support DOE in accomplishing patent-related functions for work arising out of the contract, including, but not limited to, the prosecution of patent applications, and the determination of questions of novelty, patentability, and inventorship.

(s) *Educational awards subject to 35 U.S.C. 212.* The Contractor shall notify the Contracting Officer prior to the placement of any person subject to 35 U.S.C. 212 in an area of technology or task (1) related to exceptional circumstance technology or (2) which is subject to treaties or international agreements as set forth in paragraph (b)(3) of this clause or agreements other than funding agreements. The Contracting Officer may disapprove of any such placement.

(t) *Annual appraisal by Patent Counsel.* Patent Counsel may conduct an annual appraisal to evaluate the Contractor's effectiveness in identifying and protecting subject inventions in accordance with DOE policy.

(End of clause)

Alternate 1 Weapons Related Subject Inventions. As prescribed at 970.2703-2(g), insert the following as subparagraphs (a)(10) and (b)(7), respectively:

(a) *Definitions.* (10) Weapons Related Subject Invention means any subject invention conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under work funded by or through defense programs, including Department of Defense and intelligence reimbursable work, or the Naval Nuclear Propulsion Program of the Department of Energy or the National Nuclear Security Administration.

(b) *Allocation of Principal Rights - (7) Weapons related subject inventions.* Except to the extent that DOE is solely satisfied that the Contractor meets certain procedural requirements and DOE grants rights to the Contractor in weapons related subject inventions, the Contractor does not have the right to retain title to any weapons related subject inventions.

(End of alternate)

[65 FR 81009, Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at 67 FR 48571, July 25, 2002]

§970.5227-11 Patent rights-management and operating contracts, for-profit contractor, non-technology transfer

Insert the following clause in solicitations and contracts in accordance with 970.2703-1(b)(4):

Patent Rights-Management and Operating Contracts, for-Profit Contractor, Non-Technology Transfer (DEC 2000)

(a) *Definitions.*

(1) *DOE licensing regulations* means the Department of Energy patent licensing regulations at [10 CFR Part 781](#).

(2) *DOE patent waiver regulations* means the Department of Energy patent waiver regulations at [10 CFR Part 784](#).

(3) *Invention* means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable or otherwise protectable under title 35 of the United States Code, or any novel variety of plant which is or may be protected under the Plant Variety Protection Act ([7 U.S.C. 2321](#), *et seq.*).

(4) *Made* when used in relation to any invention means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention.

(5) *Patent Counsel* means DOE Patent Counsel assisting the contracting activity.

(6) *Practical application* means to manufacture, in the case of a composition or product; to practice, in the case of a process or method; or to operate, in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are, to the extent permitted by law or Government regulations, available to the public on reasonable terms.

(7) *Subject invention* means any invention of the contractor conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under this contract, provided that in the case of a variety of plant, the date of determination (as defined in section 41(d) of the Plant Variety Protection Act, 7 U.S.C. 2401(d)) shall also occur during the period of contract performance.

(b) *Allocation of principal rights* -

(1) *Assignment to the Government.* Except to the extent that rights are retained by the Contractor by a determination of greater rights in accordance with subparagraph (b)(2) of this clause or by a request for foreign patent rights in accordance with subparagraph (d)(2) of this clause, the Contractor agrees to assign to the Government the entire right, title, and interest throughout the world in and to each subject invention.

(2) *Greater rights determinations.* The Contractor, or an Contractor employee-inventor after consultation with the Contractor and with the written authorization of the Contractor in accordance with DOE patent waiver regulations, may request greater rights, including title, in an identified subject invention than the nonexclusive license and the foreign patent rights provided for in paragraph (d) of this clause, in accordance with the DOE patent waiver regulations. Such a request shall be submitted in writing to Patent Counsel with a copy to the Contracting Officer at the time the subject invention is first disclosed to DOE in accordance with subparagraph (c)(2) of this clause, or not later than eight (8) months after such disclosure, unless a longer period is authorized in writing by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown in writing by the Contractor. DOE may grant or refuse to grant such a request by the Contractor or Contractor employee-inventor. Unless otherwise provided in the greater rights determination, any rights in a subject invention obtained by the Contractor pursuant to a determination of greater rights are subject to a nonexclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license to the Government to practice or have practiced the subject invention throughout the world by or on behalf of the Government of the United States (including any Government agency), and to any reservations and conditions deemed appropriate by the Secretary of Energy or designee.

(c) *Subject invention disclosures* -

(1) *Contractor procedures for reporting subject inventions to Contractor personnel.* Subject inventions shall be reported to Contractor personnel responsible for patent matters within six (6) months of conception and/or first actual reduction to practice, whichever occurs first in the performance of work under this contract. Accordingly, the Contractor shall establish and maintain effective procedures for ensuring such prompt identification and timely disclosure of subject inventions to Contractor personnel responsible for patent matters, and the procedures shall include the maintenance of laboratory notebooks, or equivalent records, and other records that are reasonably necessary to document the conception and/or the first actual reduction to practice of subject inventions, and the maintenance of records demonstrating compliance with such procedures. The Contractor shall submit a written description of such procedures to the Contracting Officer, upon request, for evaluation of the effectiveness of such procedures by the Contracting Officer.

(2) *Subject invention disclosure.* The Contractor shall disclose each subject invention to Patent Counsel with a copy to the Contracting Officer within two (2) months after the subject invention is reported to Contractor personnel responsible for patent matters, in accordance with subparagraph (c)(1) of this clause, or, if earlier, within six (6) months after the Contractor has knowledge of the subject invention, but in any event before any on sale, public use, or publication of the subject invention. The disclosure to DOE shall be in the form of a written report and shall include:

- (i) the contract number under which the subject invention was made;
- (ii) the inventor(s) of the subject invention;

(iii) a description of the subject invention in sufficient technical detail to convey a clear understanding of the nature, purpose and operation of the subject invention, and of the physical, chemical, biological or electrical characteristics of the subject invention, to the extent known by the Contractor at the time of the disclosure;

(iv) the date and identification of any publication, on sale or public use of the invention;

(v) the date and identification of any submissions for publication of any manuscripts describing the invention, and a statement of whether the manuscript is accepted for publication, to the extent known by the Contractor at the time of the disclosure;

(vi) a statement indicating whether the subject invention concerns exceptional circumstances pursuant to [35 U.S.C. 202\(ii\)](#), related to national security, or subject to a treaty or an international agreement, to the extent known or believed by Contractor at the time of the disclosure;

(vii) all sources of funding by Budget and Resources (B&R) code; and

(viii) the identification of any agreement relating to the subject invention, including Cooperative Research and Development Agreements and Work-for-Others agreements. Unless the Contractor contends otherwise in writing at the time the invention is disclosed, inventions disclosed to DOE under this paragraph are deemed made in the manner specified in Sections (a)(1) and (a)(2) of [42 U.S.C. 5908](#).

(3) *Publication after disclosure.* After disclosure of the subject invention to the DOE, the Contractor shall promptly notify Patent Counsel of the acceptance for publication of any manuscript describing the subject invention or of any expected or on sale or public use of the subject invention, known by the Contractor.

(4) *Contractor employee agreements.* The Contractor agrees to require, by written agreement, its employees, other than clerical and nontechnical employees, to disclose promptly in writing to Contractor personnel identified as responsible for the administration of patent matters and in a format suggested by the Contractor, each subject invention made under this contract, and to execute all papers necessary to file patent applications claiming subject inventions or to establish the Government's rights in the subject inventions. This disclosure format shall at a minimum include the information required by subparagraph (c)(2) of this clause. The Contractor shall instruct such employees, through employee agreements or other suitable educational programs, on the importance of reporting inventions in sufficient time to permit the filing of patent applications prior to U.S. or foreign statutory bars.

(5) *Contractor procedures for reporting subject inventions to DOE.* The Contractor agrees to establish and maintain effective procedures for ensuring the prompt identification and timely disclosure of subject inventions to DOE. The Contractor shall submit a written description of such procedures to the Contracting Officer, upon request, for evaluation of the effectiveness of such procedures by the Contracting Officer.

(6) *Duplication and disclosure of documents.* The Government may duplicate and disclose subject invention disclosures and all other reports and papers furnished or required to be furnished pursuant to this clause; provided, however, that any such duplication or disclosure by the Government is subject to [35 U.S.C. 205](#) and [37 CFR 401.13](#).

(d) *Minimum rights of the Contractor.*

(1) Contractor License.

(i) *Request for a Contractor license.* Except for subject inventions that the Contractor fails to disclose within the time periods specified at subparagraph (c)(2) of this clause, the Contractor may request a revocable, nonexclusive, royalty-free license in each patent application filed in any country claiming a subject invention and any resulting patent in which the Government obtains title, and DOE may grant or refuse to grant such a request by the Contractor. If DOE grants the Contractor's request for a license, the Contractor's license extends to its domestic subsidiaries and affiliates, if any, within the corporate structure of which the Contractor is a party and includes the right to grant sublicenses of the same scope to the extent the Contractor was legally obligated to do so at the time the contract was awarded.

(ii) *Transfer of a Contractor license.* DOE shall approve any transfer of the Contractor's license in a subject

invention, and DOE may determine the Contractor's license is non-transferrable, on a case-by-case basis.

(iii) *Revocation or modification of a Contractor license.* DOE may revoke or modify the Contractor's domestic license to the extent necessary to achieve expeditious practical application of the subject invention pursuant to an application for an exclusive license submitted in accordance with applicable provisions in [37 CFR Part 404](#) and DOE licensing regulations. DOE may not revoke the Contractor's domestic license in that field of use or the geographical areas in which the Contractor, its licensee, or its domestic subsidiaries or affiliates achieved practical applications and continues to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public. DOE may revoke or modify the Contractor's license in any foreign country to the extent the Contractor, its licensees, or its domestic subsidiaries or affiliates failed to achieve practical application in that foreign country.

(iv) *Notice of revocation or modification of a Contractor license.* Before revocation or modification of the license, DOE shall furnish the Contractor a written notice of its intention to revoke or modify the license, and the Contractor shall be allowed thirty (30) days from the date of the notice (or such other time as may be authorized by DOE for good cause shown by the Contractor) to show cause why the license should not be revoked or modified. The Contractor has the right to appeal any decision concerning the revocation or modification of its license, in accordance with applicable regulations in [37 CFR Part 404](#) and DOE licensing regulations.

(2) *Contractor's right to request foreign patent rights.* If the Government has title to a subject invention and the Government decides against securing patent rights in a foreign country for the subject invention, the Contractor may request such foreign patent rights from DOE, and DOE may grant the Contractor's request, subject to a nonexclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license to the Government to practice or have practiced the subject invention in the foreign country, and any reservations and conditions deemed appropriate by the Secretary of Energy or designee. Such a request shall be submitted in writing to the Patent Counsel as part of the disclosure required by subparagraph (c)(2) of this clause, with a copy to the DOE Contracting Officer, unless a longer period is authorized in writing by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown in writing by the Contractor. DOE may grant or refuse to grant such a request, and may consider whether granting the Contractor's request best serves the interests of the United States.

(e) *Examination of records relating to inventions -*

(1) *Contractor compliance.* Until the expiration of three (3) years after final payment under this contract, the Contracting Officer or any authorized representative may examine any books (including laboratory notebooks), records, and documents and other supporting data of the Contractor, which the Contracting Officer or authorized representative deems reasonably pertinent to the discovery or identification of subject inventions, or to determine Contractor (and inventor) compliance with the requirements of this clause, including proper identification and disclosure of subject inventions, and establishment and maintenance of invention disclosure procedures.

(2) *Unreported inventions.* If the Contracting Officer is aware of an invention that is not disclosed by the Contractor to DOE, and the Contracting Officer believes the unreported invention may be a subject invention, DOE may require the Contractor to submit to DOE a disclosure of the invention for a determination of ownership rights.

(3) *Confidentiality.* Any examination of records under this paragraph is subject to appropriate conditions to protect the confidentiality of the information involved.

(f) *Subcontracts -*

(1) *Subcontractor subject inventions.* The Contractor shall not obtain rights in the subcontractor's subject inventions as part of the consideration for awarding a subcontract.

(2) *Inclusion of patent rights clause-non-profit organization or small business firm subcontractors.* Unless otherwise authorized or directed by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall include the patent rights clause at [48 CFR 952.227-11](#), suitably modified to identify the parties in all subcontracts, at any tier, for experimental, developmental, demonstration or research work to be performed by a small business firm or domestic nonprofit organization, except subcontracts which are subject to exceptional circumstances in accordance with [35 U.S.C. 202\(a\)\(ii\)](#).

(3) *Inclusion of patent rights clause-subcontractors other than non-profit organizations and small business firms.* Except for the subcontracts described in subparagraph (f)(2) of this clause, the Contractor shall include the patent rights clause at [48 CFR 952.227-13](#), suitably modified to identify the parties, in any contract for experimental, developmental, demonstration or research work.

(4) *DOE and subcontractor contract.* With respect to subcontracts at any tier, DOE, the subcontractor, and the Contractor agree that the mutual obligations of the parties created by this clause constitute a contract between the subcontractor and DOE with respect to those matters covered by this clause.

(5) *Subcontractor refusal to accept terms of patent rights clause.* If a prospective subcontractor refuses to accept the terms of a patent rights clause, the Contractor shall promptly submit a written notice to the Contracting Officer stating the subcontractor's reasons for such a refusal, including any relevant information for expediting disposition of the matter, and the Contractor shall not proceed with the subcontract without the written authorization of the Contracting Officer.

(6) *Notification of award of subcontract.* Upon the award of any subcontract at any tier containing a patent rights clause, the Contractor shall promptly notify the Contracting Officer in writing and identify the subcontractor, the applicable patent rights clause, the work to be performed under the subcontract, and the dates of award and estimated completion. Upon request of the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall furnish a copy of a subcontract.

(7) *Identification of subcontractor subject inventions.* If the Contractor in the performance of this contract becomes aware of a subject invention made under a subcontract, the Contractor shall promptly notify Patent Counsel and identify the subject invention, with a copy of the notification and identification to the Contracting Officer.

(g) *Atomic energy -*

(1) *Pecuniary awards.* No claim for pecuniary award of compensation under the provisions of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, may be asserted with respect to any invention or discovery made or conceived in the course of or under this contract.

(2) *Patent agreements.* Except as otherwise authorized in writing by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall obtain patent agreements to effectuate the provisions of subparagraph (g)(1) of this clause from all persons who perform any part of the work under this contract, except nontechnical personnel, such as clerical employees and manual laborers.

(h) *Publication.* The Contractor shall receive approval from Patent Counsel prior to releasing or publishing information regarding scientific or technical developments conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under this contract, to ensure such release or publication does not adversely affect the patent interests of DOE or the Contractor.

(i) *Communications.* The Contractor shall direct any notification, disclosure, or request provided for in this clause to the Patent Counsel assisting the DOE contracting activity, with a copy of the communication to the Contracting Officer.

(j) *Reports -*

(1) *Interim reports.* Upon DOE's request, the Contractor shall submit to DOE, no more frequently than annually, a list of subject inventions disclosed to DOE during a specified period, or a statement that no subject inventions were made during the specified period; and/or a list of subcontracts containing a patent clause and awarded by the Contractor during a specified period, or a statement that no such subcontracts were awarded during the specified period. The interim report shall state whether the Contractor's invention disclosures were submitted to DOE in accordance with the requirements of subparagraphs (c)(1) and (c)(5) of this clause.

(2) *Final reports.* Upon DOE's request, the Contractor shall submit to DOE, prior to closeout of the contract or within three (3) months of the date of completion of the contracted work, a list of all subject inventions disclosed during the performance period of the contract, or a statement that no subject inventions were made during the contract performance period; and/or a list of all subcontracts containing a patent clause and awarded by the Contractor during the contract performance period, or a statement that no such subcontracts were awarded during the contract performance period.

(k) *Facilities License*. In addition to the rights of the parties with respect to inventions or discoveries conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under this contract, the Contractor agrees to and does hereby grant to the Government an irrevocable, nonexclusive, paid-up license in and to any inventions or discoveries regardless of when conceived or actually reduced to practice or acquired by the contractor at any time through completion of this contract and which are incorporated or embodied in the construction of the facility or which are utilized in the operation of the facility or which cover articles, materials, or products manufactured at the facility (1) to practice or have practiced by or for the Government at the facility, and (2) to transfer such license with the transfer of that facility. Notwithstanding the acceptance or exercise by the Government of these rights, the Government may contest at any time the enforceability, validity or scope of, or title to, any rights or patents herein licensed.

(l) *Classified inventions* -

(1) *Approval for filing a foreign patent application*. The Contractor shall not file or cause to be filed an application or registration for a patent disclosing a subject invention related to classified subject matter in any country other than the United States without first obtaining the written approval of the Contracting Officer.

(2) *Transmission of classified subject matter*. If in accordance with this clause the Contractor files a patent application in the United States disclosing a subject invention that is classified for reasons of security, the Contractor shall observe all applicable security regulations covering the transmission of classified subject matter. If the Contractor transmits a patent application disclosing a classified subject invention to the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO), the Contractor shall submit a separate letter to the USPTO identifying the contract or contracts by agency and agreement number that require security classification markings to be placed on the patent application.

(3) *Inclusion of clause in subcontracts*. The Contractor agrees to include the substance of this clause in subcontracts at any tier that cover or are likely to cover subject matter classified for reasons of security.

(m) *Patent functions*. Upon the written request of the Contracting Officer or Patent Counsel, the Contractor agrees to make reasonable efforts to support DOE in accomplishing patent-related functions for work arising out of the contract, including, but not limited to, the prosecution of patent applications, and the determination of questions of novelty, patentability, and inventorship.

(n) *Annual appraisal by Patent Counsel*. Patent Counsel may conduct an annual appraisal to evaluate the Contractor's effectiveness in identifying and protecting subject inventions in accordance with DOE policy.

(End of clause)

§970.5227-12 Patent rights-management and operating contracts, for-profit contractor, advance class waiver

Insert the following clause in solicitations and contracts in accordance with 970.2703-1(b)(3):

Patent Rights-Management and Operating Contracts, For-Profit Contractor, Advance Class Waiver (DEC 2000)

(a) *Definitions*. (1) *DOE licensing regulations* means the Department of Energy patent licensing regulations at [10 CFR Part 781](#).

(2) *DOE patent waiver regulations* means the Department of Energy patent waiver regulations at [10 CFR Part 784](#).

(3) *Exceptional Circumstance Subject Invention* means any subject invention in a technical field or related to a task determined by the Department of Energy to be subject to an exceptional circumstance under [35 U.S.C. 202\(a\)\(ii\)](#), and in accordance with [37 CFR 401.3\(e\)](#).

(4) *Invention* means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable or otherwise protectable under title 35 of the United States Code, or any novel variety of plant which is or may be protected under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321, *et seq.*).

(5) *Made* when used in relation to any invention means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention.

(6) *Patent Counsel* means DOE Patent Counsel assisting the contracting activity.

(7) *Practical application* means to manufacture, in the case of a composition or product; to practice, in the case of a process or method; or to operate, in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are, to the extent permitted by law or Government regulations, available to the public on reasonable terms.

(8) *Subject Invention* means any invention of the contractor conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under this contract, provided that in the case of a variety of plant, the date of determination (as defined in section 41(d) of the Plant Variety Protection Act, 7 U.S.C. 2401(d)) shall also occur during the period of contract performance.

(b) *Allocation of Principal Rights* -(1) *Assignment to the Government*. Except to the extent that rights are retained by the Contractor by the granting of an advance class waiver pursuant to subparagraph (b)(2) of this clause or a determination of greater rights pursuant to subparagraph (b)(7) of this clause, the Contractor agrees to assign to the Government the entire right, title, and interest throughout the world in and to each subject invention.

(2) *Advance class waiver of Government rights to the Contractor*. DOE may grant to the Contractor an advance class waiver of Government rights in any or all subject inventions, at the time of execution of the contract, such that the Contractor may elect to retain the entire right, title and interest throughout the world to such waived subject inventions, in accordance with the terms and conditions of the advance class waiver. Unless otherwise provided by the terms of the advance class waiver, any rights in a subject invention retained by the Contractor under an advance class waiver are subject to 35 U.S.C. 203 and the provisions of this clause, including the Government license provided for in subparagraph (b)(3) of this clause, and any reservations and conditions deemed appropriate by the Secretary of Energy or designee.

(3) *Government license*. With respect to any subject invention to which the Contractor retains title, either under an advance class waiver pursuant to subparagraph (b)(2) or a determination of greater rights pursuant to subparagraph (b)(7) of this clause, the Government has a nonexclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license to practice or have practiced for or on behalf of the United States the subject invention throughout the world.

(4) *Foreign patent rights*. If the Government has title to a subject invention and the Government decides against securing patent rights in a foreign country for the subject invention, the Contractor may request such foreign patent rights from DOE, and DOE may grant the Contractor's request, subject to 35 U.S.C. 203 and the provisions of this clause, including the Government license provided for in subparagraph (b)(3) of this clause, and any reservations and conditions deemed appropriate by the Secretary of Energy or designee.

(5) *Exceptional circumstance subject inventions*. Except to the extent that rights are retained by the Contractor by a determination of greater rights in accordance with subparagraph (b)(7) of this clause, the Contractor does not have the right to retain title to any exceptional circumstance subject inventions and agrees to assign to the Government the entire right, title, and interest, throughout the world, in and to any exceptional circumstance subject inventions.

(i) Inventions within or relating to the following fields of technology are exceptional circumstance subject inventions:

(A) Uranium enrichment technology;

(B) Storage and disposal of civilian high-level nuclear waste and spent fuel technology; and

(C) National security technologies classified or sensitive under Section 148 of the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 2168).

(ii) Inventions made under any agreement, contract or subcontract related to the following initiatives or programs are exceptional circumstance subject inventions:

(A) DOE Steel Initiative and Metals Initiative;

(B) U.S. Advanced Battery Consortium; and

(C) Any funding agreement which is funded in part by the Electric Power Research Institute (EPRI) or the Gas Research Institute (GRI).

(iii) DOE reserves the right to unilaterally amend this contract to modify, by deletion or insertion, technical fields, programs, initiatives, and/or other classifications for the purpose of defining DOE exceptional circumstance subject inventions.

(6) *Treaties and international agreements.* Any rights acquired by the Contractor in subject inventions are subject to any disposition of right, title, or interest in or to subject inventions provided for in treaties or international agreements identified at Appendix [*Insert Reference*], to this contract. DOE reserves the right to unilaterally amend this contract to identify specific treaties or international agreements entered into or to be entered into by the Government after the effective date of this contract and to effectuate those license or other rights which are necessary for the Government to meet its obligations to foreign governments, their nationals and international organizations under such treaties or international agreements with respect to subject inventions made after the date of the amendment.

(7) *Contractor request for greater rights.* The Contractor may request greater rights in an identified subject invention, including an exceptional circumstance subject invention, to which the Contractor does not have the right to elect to retain title, in accordance with the DOE patent waiver regulations, by submitting such a request in writing to Patent Counsel with a copy to the Contracting Officer at the time the subject invention is first disclosed to DOE pursuant to subparagraph (c)(1) of this clause, or not later than eight (8) months after such disclosure, unless a longer period is authorized in writing by the Contracting Officer for good cause shown in writing by the Contractor. DOE may grant or refuse to grant such a request by the Contractor. Unless otherwise provided in the greater rights determination, any rights in a subject invention obtained by the Contractor under a determination of greater rights is subject to [35 U.S.C. 203](#) and the provisions of this clause, including the Government license provided for in subparagraph (b)(3) of this clause, and to any reservations and conditions deemed appropriate by the Secretary of Energy or designee.

(8) *Contractor employee-inventor rights.* If the Contractor does not elect to retain title to a subject invention or does not request greater rights in a subject invention, including an exceptional circumstance subject invention, to which the Contractor does not have the right to elect to retain title, a Contractor employee-inventor, after consultation with the Contractor and with written authorization from the Contractor in accordance with [10 CFR 784.9\(b\)\(4\)](#), may request greater rights, including title, in the subject invention or the exceptional circumstance invention from DOE, and DOE may grant or refuse to grant such a request by the Contractor employee-inventor.

(9) *Government assignment of rights in Government employees' subject inventions.* If a DOE employee is a joint inventor of a subject invention to which the Contractor has rights, DOE may assign or refuse to assign any rights in the subject invention acquired by the Government from the DOE employee to the Contractor, consistent with [48 CFR 27.304-1\(d\)](#). Unless otherwise provided in the assignment, the rights assigned to the Contractor are subject to the Government license provided for in subparagraph (b)(3) of this clause, and to any provision of this clause applicable to subject inventions in which rights are retained by the Contractor, and to any reservations and conditions deemed appropriate by the Secretary of Energy or designee. The Contractor shall share royalties collected for the manufacture, use or sale of the subject invention with the DOE employee.

(c) *Subject invention disclosure, election of title, and filing of patent application by Contractor* - (1) *Subject invention disclosure.* The Contractor shall disclose each subject invention to Patent Counsel with a copy to the Contracting Officer within two (2) months after an inventor discloses it in writing to Contractor personnel responsible for patent matters or, if earlier, within six (6) months after the Contractor has knowledge of the subject invention, but in any event before any on sale, public use, or publication of the subject invention. The disclosure to DOE shall be in the form of a written report and shall include:

(i) The contract number under which the subject invention was made;

(ii) The inventor(s) of the subject invention;

(iii) A description of the subject invention in sufficient technical detail to convey a clear understanding of the nature,

purpose and operation of the subject invention, and of the physical, chemical, biological or electrical characteristics of the subject invention, to the extent known by the Contractor at the time of the disclosure;

(iv) The date and identification of any publication, on sale or public use of the invention;

(v) The date and identification of any submissions for publication of any manuscripts describing the invention, and a statement of whether the manuscript is accepted for publication, to the extent known by the Contractor at the time of the disclosure;

(vi) A statement indicating whether the subject invention is an exceptional circumstance subject invention, related to national security, or subject to a treaty or an international agreement, to the extent known or believed by Contractor at the time of the disclosure;

(vii) All sources of funding by Budget and Resources (B&R) code; and

(viii) The identification of any agreement relating to the subject invention, including Cooperative Research and Development Agreements and Work-for-Others agreements.

Unless the Contractor contends otherwise in writing at the time the invention is disclosed, inventions disclosed to DOE under this paragraph are deemed made in the manner specified in Sections (a)(1) and (a)(2) of [42 U.S.C. 5908](#).

(2) *Publication after disclosure.* After disclosure of the subject invention to the DOE, the Contractor shall promptly notify Patent Counsel of the acceptance for publication of any manuscript describing the subject invention or of any expected or on sale or public use of the subject invention, known by the Contractor. The Contractor shall obtain approval from Patent Counsel prior to any release or publication of information concerning an exceptional circumstance subject invention or any subject invention related to a treaty or international agreement.

(3) *Election by the Contractor under an advance class waiver.* If the Contractor has the right to elect to retain title to subject inventions under an advance class waiver granted in accordance with subparagraph (b)(2) of this clause, and unless otherwise provided for by the terms of the advance class waiver, the Contractor shall elect in writing whether or not to retain title to any subject invention by notifying DOE within two (2) years of the date of the disclosure of the subject invention to DOE, in accordance with subparagraph (c)(1) of this clause. The notification shall identify the advance class waiver, state the countries, including the United States, in which rights are retained, and certify that the subject invention is not an exceptional circumstance subject invention or subject to a treaty or international agreement. If a publication, on sale or public use of the subject invention has initiated the 1-year statutory period under [35 U.S.C. 102\(b\)](#), the period for election may be shortened by DOE to a date that is no more than sixty (60) days prior to the end of the 1-year statutory period.

(4) *Filing of patent applications by the Contractor under an advance class waiver.* If the Contractor has the right to retain title to a subject invention in accordance with an advance class waiver pursuant to subparagraph (b)(2) of this clause or a determination of greater rights pursuant to paragraph (b)(7) of this clause, and unless otherwise provided for by the terms of the advance class waiver or greater rights determination, the Contractor shall file an initial patent application claiming the subject invention to which it retains title either within one (1) year after the Contractor's election to retain or grant of title to the subject invention or prior to the end of any 1-year statutory period under [35 U.S.C. 102\(b\)](#), whichever occurs first. Any patent applications filed by the Contractor in foreign countries or international patent offices shall be filed within either ten (10) months of the corresponding initial patent application or, if such filing has been prohibited by a Secrecy Order, within six (6) months from the date permission is granted by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to file foreign patent applications.

(5) *Submission of patent information and documents.* If the Contractor files a domestic or foreign patent application claiming a subject invention, the Contractor shall promptly submit to Patent Counsel the following information and documents:

(i) The filing date, serial number, title, and a copy of the patent application (including an English-language version if filed in a language other than English);

(ii) An executed and approved instrument fully confirmatory of all Government rights in the subject invention; and

(iii) The patent number, issue date, and a copy of any issued patent claiming the subject invention.

(6) *Contractor's request for an extension of time.* Requests for an extension of the time to disclose a subject invention, to elect to retain title to a subject invention, or to file a patent application under subparagraphs (c)(1), (3), and (4) of this clause may be granted at the discretion of Patent Counsel or DOE.

(7) *Duplication and disclosure of documents.* The Government may duplicate and disclose subject invention disclosures and all other reports and papers furnished or required to be furnished pursuant to this clause; provided, however, that any such duplication or disclosure by the Government is subject to [35 U.S.C. 205](#) and [37 CFR part 40](#).

(d) *Conditions when the Government may obtain title notwithstanding an advance class waiver* - (1) *Return of title to a subject invention.* If the Contractor requests that DOE acquire title or rights from the Contractor in a subject invention, including an exceptional circumstance subject invention, to which the Contractor retained title or rights under subparagraph (b)(2) or subparagraph (b)(7) of this clause, DOE may acquire such title or rights from the Contractor, or DOE may decide against acquiring such title or rights from the Contractor, at DOE's sole discretion.

(2) *Failure to disclose or elect to retain title.* Title vests in DOE and DOE may request, in writing, a formal assignment of title to a subject invention from the Contractor, and the Contractor shall convey title to the subject invention to DOE, if the Contractor elects not to retain title to the subject invention under an advance class waiver, or the Contractor fails to disclose or fails to elect to retain title to the subject invention within the times specified in subparagraphs (c)(1) and (c)(3) of this clause.

(3) *Failure to file domestic or foreign patent applications.* In those countries in which the Contractor fails to file a patent application within the times specified in subparagraph (c)(4) of this clause, DOE may request, in writing, title to the subject invention from the Contractor, and the Contractor shall convey title to the subject invention to DOE; provided, however, that if the Contractor has filed a patent application in any country after the times specified in subparagraph (c)(4) of this clause, but prior to its receipt of DOE's written request for title, the Contractor continues to retain title in that country.

(4) *Discontinuation of patent protection by the Contractor.* If the Contractor decides to discontinue the prosecution of a patent application, the payment of maintenance fees, or the defense of a subject invention in a reexamination or opposition proceeding, in any country, DOE may request, in writing, title to the subject invention from the Contractor, and the Contractor shall convey title to the subject invention to DOE.

(5) *Termination of advance class waiver.* DOE may request, in writing, title to any subject inventions from the Contractor, and the Contractor shall convey title to the subject inventions to DOE, if the advance class waiver granted under subparagraph (b)(2) of this clause is terminated under paragraph (u) of this clause.

(e) *Minimum rights of the Contractor* - (1) *Request for a Contractor license.* Except for subject inventions that the Contractor fails to disclose within the time periods specified at subparagraph (c)(1) of this clause, the Contractor may request a revocable, nonexclusive, royalty-free license in each patent application filed in any country claiming a subject invention and any resulting patent in which the Government obtains title, and DOE may grant or refuse to grant such a request by the Contractor. If DOE grants the Contractor's request for a license, the Contractor's license extends to its domestic subsidiaries and affiliates, if any, within the corporate structure of which the Contractor is a party and includes the right to grant sublicenses of the same scope to the extent the Contractor was legally obligated to do so at the time the contract was awarded.

(2) *Transfer of a Contractor license.* DOE shall approve any transfer of the Contractor's license in a subject invention, and DOE may determine that the Contractor's license is non-transferrable, on a case-by-case basis.

(3) *Revocation or modification of a Contractor license.* DOE may revoke or modify the Contractor's domestic license to the extent necessary to achieve expeditious practical application of the subject invention pursuant to an application for an exclusive license submitted in accordance with applicable provisions in [37 CFR Part 404](#) and DOE licensing regulations. DOE may not revoke the Contractor's domestic license in that field of use or the geographical areas in which the Contractor, its licensees or its domestic subsidiaries or affiliates have achieved practical applications and continues to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public. DOE may revoke or modify the Contractor's license in any foreign country to the extent the Contractor, its licensees, or its domestic subsidiaries or affiliates failed to achieve practical application in that foreign country.

(4) *Notice of revocation or modification of a Contractor license.* Before revocation or modification of the license, DOE shall furnish the Contractor a written notice of its intention to revoke or modify the license, and the Contractor shall be allowed thirty (30) days from the date of the notice (or such other time as may be authorized by DOE for good cause shown by the Contractor) to show cause why the license should not be revoked or modified. The Contractor has the right to appeal any decision concerning the revocation or modification of its license, in accordance with applicable regulations in [37 CFR part 404](#) and DOE licensing regulations.

(f) *Contractor action to protect the Government's interest - (1) Execution and delivery of title or license instruments.* The Contractor agrees to execute or have executed, and to deliver promptly to DOE all instruments necessary to accomplish the following actions:

(i) Establish or confirm the Government's rights throughout the world in subject inventions to which the Contractor elects to retain title;

(ii) Convey title in a subject invention to DOE pursuant to subparagraph (b)(5) and paragraph (d) of this clause; or

(iii) Enable the Government to obtain patent protection throughout the world in a subject invention to which the Government has title.

(2) *Contractor employee agreements.* The Contractor agrees to require, by written agreement, its employees, other than clerical and nontechnical employees, to disclose promptly in writing to Contractor personnel identified as responsible for the administration of patent matters and in a format suggested by the Contractor, each subject invention made under this contract, and to execute all papers necessary to file patent applications claiming subject inventions or to establish the Government's rights in the subject inventions. This disclosure format shall at a minimum include the information required by subparagraph (c)(1) of this clause. The Contractor shall instruct such employees, through employee agreements or other suitable educational programs, on the importance of reporting inventions in sufficient time to permit the filing of patent applications prior to U.S. or foreign statutory bars.

(3) *Contractor procedures for reporting subject inventions to DOE.* The Contractor agrees to establish and maintain effective procedures for ensuring the prompt identification and timely disclosure of subject inventions to DOE. The Contractor shall submit a written description of such procedures to the Contracting Officer, upon request, for evaluation and approval of the effectiveness of such procedures by the Contracting Officer.

(4) *Notification of discontinuation of patent protection.* With respect to any subject invention for which the Contractor has responsibility for patent prosecution, the Contractor shall notify Patent Counsel of any decision to discontinue the prosecution of a patent application, payment of maintenance fees, or defense of a subject invention in a reexamination or opposition proceeding, in any country, not less than thirty (30) days before the expiration of the response period for any action required by the corresponding patent office.

(5) *Notification of Government rights.* With respect to any subject invention to which the Contractor has title, the Contractor agrees to include, within the specification of any United States patent application and within any patent issuing thereon claiming a subject invention, the following statement, "This invention was made with Government support under (identify the contract) awarded by the United States Department of Energy. The Government has certain rights in the invention."

(6) *Avoidance of royalty charges.* If the Contractor licenses a subject invention, the Contractor agrees to avoid royalty charges on acquisitions involving Government funds, including funds derived through a Military Assistance Program of the Government or otherwise derived through the Government, to refund any amounts received as royalty charges on a subject invention in acquisitions for, or on behalf of, the Government, and to provide for such refund in any instrument transferring rights in the subject invention to any party.

(7) *DOE approval of assignment of rights.* Rights in a subject invention in the United States may not be assigned by the Contractor without the approval of DOE.

(8) *Small business firm licensees.* The Contractor shall make efforts that are reasonable under the circumstances to attract licensees of subject inventions that are small business firms, and may give a preference to a small business firm when licensing a subject invention if the Contractor determines that the small business firm has a plan or proposal for marketing the invention which, if executed, is equally as likely to bring the invention to practical application as any plans or proposals

from applicants that are not small business firms; provided, the Contractor is also satisfied that the small business firm has the capability and resources to carry out its plan or proposal. The decision as to whether to give a preference in any specific case is at the discretion of the Contractor.

(9) *Contractor licensing of subject inventions.* To the extent that it provides the most effective technology transfer, licensing of subject inventions shall be administered by Contractor employees on location at the facility.

(g) *Subcontracts* -(1) *Subcontractor subject inventions.* The Contractor shall not obtain rights in the subcontractor's subject inventions as part of the consideration for awarding a subcontract.

(2) *Inclusion of patent rights clause-non-profit organization or small business firm subcontractors.* Unless otherwise authorized or directed by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall include the patent rights clause at [48 CFR 952.227-11](#), suitably modified to identify the parties, in all subcontracts, at any tier, for experimental, developmental, demonstration or research work to be performed by a small business firm or domestic nonprofit organization, except subcontracts which are subject to exceptional circumstances in accordance with [35 U.S.C. 202](#) and subparagraph (b)(5) of this clause.

(3) *Inclusion of patent rights clause-subcontractors other than non-profit organizations or small business firms.* Except for the subcontracts described in subparagraph (g)(2) of this clause, the Contractor shall include the patent rights clause at [48 CFR 952.227-13](#), suitably modified to identify the parties and any applicable exceptional circumstance, in any contract for experimental, developmental, demonstration or research work.

(4) *DOE and subcontractor contract.* With respect to subcontracts at any tier, DOE, the subcontractor and Contractor agree that the mutual obligations of the parties created by this clause constitute a contract between the subcontractor and DOE with respect to those matters covered by this clause; provided, however, that nothing in this paragraph is intended to confer any jurisdiction under the Contract Disputes Act in connection with proceedings under paragraph (j) of this clause.

(5) *Subcontractor refusal to accept terms of patent rights clause.* If a prospective subcontractor refuses to accept the terms of a patent rights clause, the Contractor shall promptly submit a written notice to the Contracting Officer stating the subcontractor's reasons for such refusal and including relevant information for expediting disposition of the matter; and the Contractor shall not proceed with the subcontract without the written authorization of the Contracting Officer.

(6) *Notification of award of subcontract.* Upon the award of any subcontract at any tier containing a patent rights clause, the Contractor shall promptly notify the Contracting Officer in writing and identify the subcontractor, the applicable patent rights clause, the work to be performed under the subcontract, and the dates of award and estimated completion. Upon request of the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall furnish a copy of a subcontract.

(7) *Identification of subcontractor subject inventions.* If the Contractor in the performance of this contract becomes aware of a subject invention made under a subcontract, the Contractor shall promptly notify Patent Counsel and identify the subject invention, with a copy of the notification and identification to the Contracting Officer.

(h) *Reporting on utilization of subject inventions.* Upon request by DOE, the Contractor agrees to submit periodic reports, no more frequently than annually, describing the utilization of a subject invention or efforts made by the Contractor or its licensees or assignees to obtain utilization of the subject invention. The reports shall include information regarding the status of development, date of first commercial sale or use, gross royalties received by the Contractor, and other data and information reasonably specified by DOE. Upon request by DOE, the Contractor also agrees to provide reports in connection with any march-in proceedings undertaken by DOE, in accordance with paragraph (j) of this clause. If any data or information reported by the Contractor in accordance with this provision is considered privileged and confidential by the Contractor, its licensee, or assignee and the Contractor properly marks the data or information privileged or confidential, DOE agrees not to disclose such information to persons outside the Government, to the extent permitted by law.

(i) *Preference for United States industry.* Notwithstanding any other provision of this clause the Contractor agrees that with respect to any subject invention in which it retains title, neither it nor any assignee may grant to any person the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the United States unless such person agrees that any products embodying the subject invention or produced through the use of the subject invention will be manufactured substantially in the United States. However, in individual cases, DOE may waive the requirement for such an agreement upon a showing by the Contractor or its assignee that reasonable but unsuccessful efforts have been made to grant licenses on similar terms to potential licensees that would be likely to manufacture substantially in the United States or that under the circumstances domestic manufacture is not commercially feasible.

(j) *March-In rights.* With respect to any subject invention to which the Contractor has elected to retain or is granted title, DOE may, in accordance with the procedures in the DOE patent waiver regulations, require the Contractor, an assignee or exclusive licensee of a subject invention to grant a nonexclusive, partially exclusive or exclusive license in any field of use to a responsible applicant or applicants, upon terms that are reasonable under the circumstances. If the Contractor, assignee or exclusive licensee refuses such a request, DOE has the right to grant such a license itself if DOE determines that-

(1) Such action is necessary because the Contractor or assignee has not taken, or is not expected to take within a reasonable time, effective steps to achieve practical application of the subject invention in such field of use;

(2) Such action is necessary to alleviate health or safety needs that are not reasonably satisfied by the Contractor, assignee, or their licensees;

(3) Such action is necessary to meet requirements for public use specified by government regulations and such requirements are not reasonably satisfied by the Contractor, assignee, or licensees; or

(4) Such action is necessary because the agreement to substantially manufacture in the United States and required by paragraph (i) of this clause has neither been obtained nor waived or because a licensee of the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the United States is in breach of such agreement.

(k) *Communications.* The Contractor shall direct any notification, disclosure, or request provided for in this clause to the Patent Counsel identified in the contract.

(l) *Reports* -(1) *Interim reports.* Upon DOE's request, the Contractor shall submit to DOE, no more frequently than annually, a list of subject inventions disclosed to DOE during a specified period, or a statement that no subject inventions were made during the specified period; and/or a list of subcontracts containing a patent clause and awarded by the Contractor during a specified period, or a statement that no such subcontracts were awarded during the specified period. The interim report shall state whether the Contractor's invention disclosures were submitted to DOE in accordance with the requirements of subparagraphs (f)(3) and (f)(4) of this clause.

(2) *Final reports.* Upon DOE's request, the Contractor shall submit to DOE, prior to closeout of the contract or within three (3) months of the date of completion of the contracted work, a list of all subject inventions disclosed during the performance period of the contract, or a statement that no subject inventions were made during the contract performance period; and/or a list of all subcontracts containing a patent clause and awarded by the Contractor during the contract performance period, or a statement that no such subcontracts were awarded during the contract performance period.

(m) *Facilities License.* In addition to the rights of the parties with respect to inventions or discoveries conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under this contract, the Contractor agrees to and does hereby grant to the Government an irrevocable, nonexclusive, paid-up license in and to any inventions or discoveries regardless of when conceived or actually reduced to practice or acquired by the contractor at any time through completion of this contract and which are incorporated or embodied in the construction of the facility or which are utilized in the operation of the facility or which cover articles, materials, or products manufactured at the facility (1) to practice or have practiced by or for the Government at the facility, and (2) to transfer such license with the transfer of that facility. Notwithstanding the acceptance or exercise by the Government of these rights, the Government may contest at any time the enforceability, validity or scope of, or title to, any rights or patents herein licensed.

(n) *Atomic energy* -(1) *Pecuniary awards.* No claim for pecuniary award of compensation under the provisions of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, may be asserted with respect to any invention or discovery made or conceived in the course of or under this contract.

(2) *Patent agreements.* Except as otherwise authorized in writing by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall obtain patent agreements to effectuate the provisions of subparagraph (o)(1) of this clause from all persons who perform any part of the work under this contract, except nontechnical personnel, such as clerical employees and manual laborers.

(o) *Classified inventions* -(1) *Approval for filing a foreign patent application.* The Contractor shall not file or cause to be filed an application or registration for a patent disclosing a subject invention related to classified subject matter in any country other than the United States without first obtaining the written approval of the Contracting Officer.

(2) *Transmission of classified subject matter.* If in accordance with this clause the Contractor files a patent application in the United States disclosing a subject invention that is classified for reasons of security, the Contractor shall observe all applicable security regulations covering the transmission of classified subject matter. If the Contractor transmits a patent application disclosing a classified subject invention to the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO), the Contractor shall submit a separate letter to the USPTO identifying the contract or contracts by agency and agreement number that require security classification markings to be placed on the patent application.

(3) *Inclusion of clause in subcontracts.* The Contractor agrees to include the substance of this clause in subcontracts at any tier that cover or are likely to cover subject matter classified for reasons of security.

(p) *Examination of records relating to inventions* - (1) *Contractor compliance.* Until the expiration of three (3) years after final payment under this contract, the Contracting Officer or any authorized representative may examine any books (including laboratory notebooks), records, and documents and other supporting data of the Contractor, which the Contracting Officer or authorized representative deems reasonably pertinent to the discovery or identification of subject inventions, including exceptional circumstance subject inventions, or to determine Contractor (and inventor) compliance with the requirements of this clause, including proper identification and disclosure of subject inventions, and establishment and maintenance of invention disclosure procedures.

(2) *Unreported inventions.* If the Contracting Officer is aware of an invention that is not disclosed by the Contractor to DOE, and the Contracting Officer believes the unreported invention may be a subject invention, DOE may require the Contractor to submit to DOE a disclosure of the invention for a determination of ownership rights.

(3) *Confidentiality.* Any examination of records under this paragraph is subject to appropriate conditions to protect the confidentiality of the information involved.

(4) *Power of inspection.* With respect to a subject invention for which the Contractor has responsibility for patent prosecution, the Contractor shall furnish the Government, upon request by DOE, an irrevocable power to inspect and make copies of a prosecution file for any patent application claiming the subject invention.

(q) *Patent functions.* Upon the written request of the Contracting Officer or Patent Counsel, the Contractor agrees to make reasonable efforts to support DOE in accomplishing patent-related functions for work arising out of the contract, including, but not limited to, the prosecution of patent applications, and the determination of questions of novelty, patentability, and inventorship.

(r) *Educational awards subject to 35 U.S.C. 212.* The Contractor shall notify the Contracting Officer prior to the placement of any person subject to 35 U.S.C. 212 in an area of technology or task (1) related to exceptional circumstance technology or (2) any person who is subject to treaties or international agreements as set forth in paragraph (b)(6) of this clause or to agreements other than funding agreements. The Contracting Officer may disapprove of any such placement.

(s) *Annual appraisal by Patent Counsel.* Patent Counsel may conduct an annual appraisal to evaluate the Contractor's effectiveness in identifying and protecting subject inventions in accordance with DOE policy.

(t) *Publication.* The Contractor shall receive approval from Patent Counsel prior to releasing or publishing information regarding scientific or technical developments conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under this contract, to ensure such release or publication does not adversely affect the patent rights of DOE or the Contractor.

(u) *Termination of contractor's advance class waiver.* If a request by the Contractor for an advance class waiver pursuant to subparagraph (b)(2) of this clause or a determination of greater rights pursuant to paragraph (c) of this clause contains false material statements or fails to disclose material facts, and DOE relies on the false statements or omissions in granting the Contractor's request, the waiver or grant of any Government rights (in whole or in part) to the subject invention(s) may be terminated at the discretion of the Secretary of Energy or designee. Prior to termination, DOE shall provide the Contractor with written notification of the termination, including a statement of facts in support of the termination, and the Contractor shall be allowed thirty (30) days, or a longer period authorized by the Secretary of Energy or designee for good cause shown in writing by the Contractor, to show cause for not terminating the waiver or grant. Any termination of an advance class waiver or a determination of greater rights is subject to the Contractor's license as provided for in paragraph (f) of this clause.

(End of clause)

Alternate 1 Weapons Related Subject Inventions. As prescribed at 970.2703-2(g), insert the following as subparagraphs (a)(9) and (b)(10), respectively:

(a) *Definitions.* (9) *Weapons Related Subject Invention* means any subject invention conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the course of or under work funded by or through defense programs, including Department of Defense and intelligence reimbursable work, or the Naval Nuclear Propulsion Program of the Department of Energy or the National Nuclear Security Administration.

(b) *Allocation of Principal Rights.* (10) *Weapons related subject inventions.* Except to the extent that DOE is solely satisfied that the Contractor meets certain procedural requirements and DOE grants rights to the Contractor in weapons related subject inventions, the Contractor does not have a right to retain title to any weapons related subject inventions.

(End of alternate)

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [67 FR 48571](#), July 25, 2002]

§970.5228-1 Insurance-litigation and claims

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36375](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.2803-2](#), insert the following clause:

Insurance-Litigation and Claims (DEC 2000)

(a) The contractor may, with the prior written authorization of the contracting officer, and shall, upon the request of the Government, initiate litigation against third parties, including proceedings before administrative agencies, in connection with this contract. The contractor shall proceed with such litigation in good faith and as directed from time to time by the contracting officer.

(b) The contractor shall give the contracting officer immediate notice in writing of any legal proceeding, including any proceeding before an administrative agency, filed against the contractor arising out of the performance of this contract. Except as otherwise directed by the contracting officer, in writing, the contractor shall furnish immediately to the contracting officer copies of all pertinent papers received by the contractor with respect to such action. The contractor, with the prior written authorization of the contracting officer, shall proceed with such litigation in good faith and as directed from time to time by the contracting officer.

(c)

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (c)(2) of this clause, the contractor shall procure and maintain such bonds and insurance as required by law or approved in writing by the contracting officer.

(2) The contractor may, with the approval of the contracting officer, maintain a self-insurance program; provided that, with respect to workers' compensation, the contractor is qualified pursuant to statutory authority.

(3) All bonds and insurance required by this clause shall be in a form and amount and for those periods as the contracting officer may require or approve and with sureties and insurers approved by the contracting officer.

(d) The contractor agrees to submit for the contracting officer's approval, to the extent and in the manner required by the contracting officer, any other bonds and insurance that are maintained by the contractor in connection with the performance of this contract and for which the contractor seeks reimbursement. If an insurance cost (whether a premium for commercial insurance or related to self-insurance) includes a portion covering costs made unallowable elsewhere in the contract, and the share of the cost for coverage for the unallowable cost is determinable, the portion of the cost that is otherwise an allowable cost under this contract is reimbursable to the extent determined by the contracting officer.

(e) Except as provided in subparagraphs (g) and (h) of this clause, or specifically disallowed elsewhere in this contract, the contractor shall be reimbursed-

(1) For that portion of the reasonable cost of bonds and insurance allocable to this contract required in accordance with contract terms or approved under this clause, and

(2) For liabilities (and reasonable expenses incidental to such liabilities, including litigation costs) to third persons not compensated by insurance or otherwise without regard to and as an exception to the clause of this contract entitled, "Obligation of Funds."

(f) The Government's liability under paragraph (e) of this clause is subject to the availability of appropriated funds. Nothing in this contract shall be construed as implying that the Congress will, at a later date, appropriate funds sufficient to meet deficiencies.

(g) Notwithstanding any other provision of this contract, the contractor shall not be reimbursed for liabilities (and expenses incidental to such liabilities, including litigation costs, counsel fees, judgment and settlements)-

(1) Which are otherwise unallowable by law or the provisions of this contract; or

(2) For which the contractor has failed to insure or to maintain insurance as required by law, this contract, or by the written direction of the contracting officer.

(h) In addition to the cost reimbursement limitations contained in [48 CFR part 31](#), as supplemented by [48 CFR 970.31](#), and notwithstanding any other provision of this contract, the contractor's liabilities to third persons, including employees but excluding costs incidental to worker's compensation actions, (and any expenses incidental to such liabilities, including litigation costs, counsel fees, judgments and settlements) shall not be reimbursed if such liabilities were caused by contractor managerial personnel's-

(1) Willful misconduct,

(2) Lack of good faith, or

(3) Failure to exercise prudent business judgment, which means failure to act in the same manner as a prudent person in the conduct of competitive business; or, in the case of a non-profit educational institution, failure to act in the manner that a prudent person would under the circumstances prevailing at the time the decision to incur the cost is made.

(i) The burden of proof shall be upon the contractor to establish that costs covered by paragraph (h) of this clause are allowable and reasonable if, after an initial review of the facts, the contracting officer challenges a specific cost or informs the contractor that there is reason to believe that the cost results from willful misconduct, lack of good faith, or failure to exercise prudent business judgment by contractor managerial personnel.

(j)

(1) All litigation costs, including counsel fees, judgments and settlements shall be differentiated and accounted for by the contractor so as to be separately identifiable. If the contracting officer provisionally disallows such costs, then the contractor may not use funds advanced by DOE under the contract to finance the litigation.

(2) Punitive damages are not allowable unless the act or failure to act which gave rise to the liability resulted from compliance with specific terms and conditions of the contract or written instructions from the contracting officer.

(3) The portion of the cost of insurance obtained by the contractor that is allocable to coverage of liabilities referred to in paragraph (g)(1) of this clause is not allowable.

(4) The term “contractor's managerial personnel” is defined in clause paragraph (j) of [48 CFR 970.5245-1](#).

(k) The contractor may at its own expense and not as an allowable cost procure for its own protection insurance to compensate the contractor for any unallowable or unreimbursable costs incurred in connection with contract performance.

(l) If any suit or action is filed or any claim is made against the contractor, the cost and expense of which may be reimbursable to the contractor under this contract, and the risk of which is then uninsured or is insured for less than the amount claimed, the contractor shall-

(1) Immediately notify the contracting officer and promptly furnish copies of all pertinent papers received;

(2) Authorize Department representatives to collaborate with: in-house or DOE-approved outside counsel in settling or defending the claim; or counsel for the insurance carrier in settling or defending the claim if the amount of the liability claimed exceeds the amount of coverage, unless precluded by the terms of the insurance contract; and

(3) Authorize Department representatives to settle the claim or to defend or represent the contractor in and/or to take charge of any litigation, if required by the Department, if the liability is not insured or covered by bond. In any action against more than one Department contractor, the Department may require the contractor to be represented by common counsel. Counsel for the contractor may, at the contractor's own expense, be associated with the Department representatives in any such claim or litigation.

(End of clause)

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [66 FR 4627](#), Jan. 18, 2001; [67 FR 14873](#), Mar. 28, 2002]

§970.5229-1 State and local taxes

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36375](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.2904-1\(b\)](#), insert the following clause in management and operating contracts. The requirement for the notice prescribed in paragraph (a) of the clause may be broadened to include all State and local taxes which may be claimed as allowable costs when considered to be appropriate.

State and Local Taxes (DEC 2000)

(a) The contractor agrees to notify the contracting officer of any State or local tax, fee, or charge levied or purported to be levied on or collected from the contractor with respect to the contract work, any transaction thereunder, or property in the custody or control of the contractor and constituting an allowable item of cost if due and payable, but which the contractor has reason to believe, or the contracting officer has advised the contractor, is or may be inapplicable or invalid; and the contractor further agrees to refrain from paying any such tax, fee, or charge unless authorized in writing by the contracting

officer. Any State or local tax, fee, or charge paid with the approval of the contracting officer or on the basis of advice from the contracting officer that such tax, fee, or charge is applicable and valid, and which would otherwise be an allowable item of cost, shall not be disallowed as an item of cost by reason of any subsequent ruling or determination that such tax, fee, or charge was in fact inapplicable or invalid.

(b) The contractor agrees to take such action as may be required or approved by the contracting officer to cause any State or local tax, fee, or charge which would be an allowable cost to be paid under protest; and to take such action as may be required or approved by the contracting officer to seek recovery of any payments made, including assignment to the Government or its designee of all rights to an abatement or refund thereof, and granting permission for the Government to join with the contractor in any proceedings for the recovery thereof or to sue for recovery in the name of the contractor. If the contracting officer directs the contractor to institute litigation to enjoin the collection of or to recover payment of any such tax, fee, or charge referred to above, or if a claim or suit is filed against the contractor for a tax, fee, or charge it has refrained from paying in accordance with this clause, the procedures and requirements of the clause entitled "Insurance-Litigation and Claims" shall apply and the costs and expenses incurred by the contractor shall be allowable items of costs, as provided in this contract, together with the amount of any judgment rendered against the contractor.

(c) The Government shall hold the contractor harmless from penalties and interest incurred through compliance with this clause. All recoveries or credits in respect of the foregoing taxes, fees, and charges (including interest) shall inure to and be for the sole benefit of the Government.

(End of clause)

§970.5231-4 Preexisting conditions

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36375](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.3170](#), insert the following clause:

Preexisting Conditions (DEC 2000)

(a) The Department of Energy agrees to reimburse the contractor, and the contractor shall not be held responsible, for any liability (including without limitation, a claim involving strict or absolute liability and any civil fine or penalty), expense, or remediation cost, but limited to those of a civil nature, which may be incurred by, imposed on, or asserted against the contractor arising out of any condition, act, or failure to act which occurred before the contractor assumed responsibility on [Insert date contract began]. To the extent the acts or omissions of the contractor cause or add to any liability, expense or remediation cost resulting from conditions in existence prior to [Insert date contract began], the contractor shall be responsible in accordance with the terms and conditions of this contract.

(b) The obligations of the Department of Energy under this clause are subject to the availability of appropriated funds.

(End of clause)

Alternate I (DEC 2000). As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.3170](#) (a), in contracts with incumbent management and operating contractors, substitute the following for paragraph (a) of the basic clause:

(a) Any liability, obligation, loss, damage, claim (including without limitation, a claim involving strict or absolute liability),

action, suit, civil fine or penalty, cost, expense or disbursement, which may be incurred or imposed, or asserted by any party and arising out of any condition, act or failure to act which occurred before [Insert date this clause was included in contract], in conjunction with the management and operation of [Insert name of facility], shall be deemed incurred under Contract No. [Insert number of prior contract].

Alternate II (DEC 2000). As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.3170](#) (b), add the following paragraph (c) to the basic clause in contracts with management and operating contractors not previously working at that particular site or facility:

(c) The contractor has the duty to inspect the facilities and sites and timely identify to the contracting officer those conditions which it believes could give rise to a liability, obligation, loss, damage, penalty, fine, claim, action, suit, cost, expense, or disbursement or areas of actual or potential noncompliance with the terms and conditions of this contract or applicable law or regulation. The contractor has the responsibility to take corrective action, as directed by the contracting officer and as required elsewhere in this contract.

(End of clause)

§970.5232-1 Reduction or suspension of advance, partial, or progress payments upon finding of substantial evidence of fraud

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36375](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.3200-1-1](#), insert the following clause:

Reduction or Suspension of Advance, Partial, or Progress Payments (DEC 2000)

(a) The contracting officer may reduce or suspend further advance, partial, or progress payments to the contractor upon a written determination by the Senior Procurement Executive that substantial evidence exists that the contractor's request for advance, partial, or progress payment is based on fraud.

(b) The contractor shall be afforded a reasonable opportunity to respond in writing.

(End of clause)

§970.5232-2 Payments and advances

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36375](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in 48 CFR 970.3270(a)(1), insert the following clause:

Payments and Advances (DEC 2000)

(a) *Installments of fixed-fee.* The fixed-fee payable under this contract shall become due and payable in periodic installments in accordance with a schedule determined by the contracting officer. Fixed-fee payments shall be made by direct payment or withdrawn from funds advanced or available under this contract, as determined by the contracting officer. The contracting officer may offset against any such fee payment the amounts owed to the Government by the contractor, including any amounts owed for disallowed costs under this contract. No fixed-fee payment may be withdrawn against the payments cleared financing arrangement without prior written approval of the contracting officer.

(b) *Payments on Account of Allowable Costs.* The contracting officer and the contractor shall agree as to the extent to which payment for allowable costs or payments for other items specifically approved in writing by the contracting officer (for example, negotiated fixed amounts) shall be made from advances of Government funds. When pension contributions are paid by the contractor to the retirement fund less frequently than quarterly, accrued costs therefor shall be excluded from costs for payment purposes until such costs are paid. If pension contribution are paid on a quarterly or more frequent basis, accrual therefor may be included in costs for payment purposes, provided that they are paid to the fund within 30 days after the close of the period covered. If payments are not made to the fund within such 30-day period, pension contribution costs shall be excluded from cost for payment purposes until payment has been made.

(c) *Special financial institution account-use.* All advances of Government funds shall be withdrawn pursuant to a payments cleared financing arrangement prescribed by DOE in favor of the financial institution or, at the option of the Government, shall be made by direct payment or other payment mechanism to the contractor, and shall be deposited only in the special financial institution account referred to in the Special Financial Institution Account Agreement, which is incorporated into this contract as Appendix-. No part of the funds in the special financial institution account shall be commingled with any funds of the contractor or used for a purpose other than that of making payments for costs allowable and, if applicable, fees earned under this contract, negotiated fixed amounts, or payments for other items specifically approved in writing by the contracting officer. If the contracting officer determines that the balance of such special financial institution account exceeds the contractor's current needs, the contractor shall promptly make such disposition of the excess as the contracting officer may direct.

(d) *Title to funds advanced.* Title to the unexpended balance of any funds advanced and of any special financial institution account established pursuant to this clause shall remain in the Government and be superior to any claim or lien of the financial institution of deposit or others. It is understood that an advance to the contractor hereunder is not a loan to the contractor, and will not require the payment of interest by the contractor, and that the contractor acquires no right, title or interest in or to such advance other than the right to make expenditures therefrom, as provided in this clause.

(e) *Financial settlement.* The Government shall promptly pay to the contractor the unpaid balance of allowable costs (or other items specifically approved in writing by the contracting officer) and fee upon termination of the work, expiration of the term of the contract, or completion of the work and its acceptance by the Government after:

(1) Compliance by the contractor with DOE's patent clearance requirements, and

(2) The furnishing by the contractor of:

(i) An assignment of the contractor's rights to any refunds, rebates, allowances, accounts receivable, collections accruing to the contractor in connection with the work under this contract, or other credits applicable to allowable costs under the contract;

(ii) A closing financial statement;

(iii) The accounting for Government-owned property required by the clause entitled "Property"; and

(iv) A release discharging the Government, its officers, agents, and employees from all liabilities, obligations, and claims arising out of or under this contract subject only to the following exceptions:

(A) Specified claims in stated amounts or in estimated amounts where the amounts are not

susceptible to exact statement by the contractor;

(B) Claims, together with reasonable expenses incidental thereto, based upon liabilities of the contractor to third parties arising out of the performance of this contract; provided that such claims are not known to the contractor on the date of the execution of the release; and provided further that the contractor gives notice of such claims in writing to the contracting officer promptly, but not more than one (1) year after the contractor's right of action first accrues. In addition, the contractor shall provide prompt notice to the contracting officer of all potential claims under this clause, whether in litigation or not (see also Contract Clause __, DEAR 970.5228-1, "Insurance-Litigation and Claims");

(C) Claims for reimbursement of costs (other than expenses of the contractor by reason of any indemnification of the Government against patent liability), including reasonable expenses incidental thereto, incurred by the contractor under the provisions of this contract relating to patents; and

(D) Claims recognizable under the clause entitled, Nuclear Hazards Indemnity Agreement.

(3) In arriving at the amount due the contractor under this clause, there shall be deducted,

(i) Any claim which the Government may have against the contractor in connection with this contract, and

(ii) Deductions due under the terms of this contract, and not otherwise recovered by or credited to the Government. The unliquidated balance of the special financial institution account may be applied to the amount due and any balance shall be returned to the Government forthwith.

(f) *Claims.* Claims for credit against funds advanced for payment shall be accompanied by such supporting documents and justification as the contracting officer shall prescribe.

(g) *Discounts.* The contractor shall take and afford the Government the advantage of all known and available cash and trade discounts, rebates, allowances, credits, salvage, and commissions unless the contracting officer finds that action is not in the best interest of the Government.

(h) *Collections.* All collections accruing to the contractor in connection with the work under this contract, except for the contractor's fee and royalties or other income accruing to the contractor from technology transfer activities in accordance with this contract, shall be Government property and shall be processed and accounted for in accordance with applicable requirements imposed by the contracting officer pursuant to the Laws, regulations, and DOE directives clause of this contract and, to the extent consistent with those requirements, shall be deposited in the special financial institution account or otherwise made available for payment of allowable costs under this contract, unless otherwise directed by the contracting officer.

(i) *Direct payment of charges.* The Government reserves the right, upon ten days written notice from the contracting officer to the contractor, to pay directly to the persons concerned, all amounts due which otherwise would be allowable under this contract. Any payment so made shall discharge the Government of all liability to the contractor therefor.

(j) *Determining allowable costs.* The contracting officer shall determine allowable costs in accordance with the Federal Acquisition Regulation subpart 31.2 and the Department of Energy Acquisition Regulation subpart 48 CFR 970.31 in effect on the date of this contract and other provisions of this contract.

Alternate I (DEC 2000). As prescribed in 48 CFR 970.3270(a)(1)(i), if a separate fixed-fee is provided for a separate item of work, paragraph (a) of the basic clause should be modified to permit payment of the entire fixed-fee upon completion of that item.

Alternate II (DEC 2000). As prescribed in 48 CFR 970.3270(a)(1)(ii), when total available fee provisions are used, replace paragraph (a) of the basic clause with the following paragraph (a):

(a) *Payment of Total available fee: Base Fee and Performance Fee.* The base fee amount, if any, is payable in equal

monthly installments. Total available fee amount earned is payable following the Government's Determination of Total Available Fee Amount Earned in accordance with the clause of this contract entitled "Total Available Fee: Base Fee Amount and Performance Fee Amount." Base fee amount and total available fee amount earned payments shall be made by direct payment or withdrawn from funds advanced or available under this contract, as determined by the contracting officer. The contracting officer may offset against any such fee payment the amounts owed to the Government by the contractor, including any amounts owed for disallowed costs under this contract. No base fee amount or total available fee amount earned payment may be withdrawn against the payments cleared financing arrangement without the prior written approval of the contracting officer.

Alternate III (DEC 2000). As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.3270\(a\)\(1\)\(iii\)](#), the following paragraph (k) shall be included in management and operating contracts with integrated accounting systems:

(k) Review and approval of costs incurred. The contractor shall prepare and submit annually as of September 30, a "Statement of Costs Incurred and Claimed" (Cost Statement) for the total of net expenditures accrued (i.e., net costs incurred) for the period covered by the Cost Statement. The contractor shall certify the Cost Statement subject to the penalty provisions for unallowable costs as stated in sections 306(b) and (i) of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949 ([41 U.S.C. 256](#)), as amended. DOE, after audit and appropriate adjustment, will approve such Cost Statement. This approval by DOE will constitute an acknowledgment by DOE that the net costs incurred are allowable under the contract and that they have been recorded in the accounts maintained by the contractor in accordance with DOE accounting policies, but will not relieve the contractor of responsibility for DOE's assets in its care, for appropriate subsequent adjustments, or for errors later becoming known to DOE.

Alternate IV (DEC 2000). As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.3270\(a\)\(1\)\(iv\)](#), the following paragraph (k) shall be included in management and operating contracts without integrated accounting systems:

(k) *Certification and penalties.* The contractor shall prepare and submit a "Statement of Costs Incurred and Claimed" (Cost Statement) for the total of net expenditures incurred for the period covered by the Cost Statement. It is anticipated that this will be an annual submission unless otherwise agreed to by the contracting officer. The contractor shall certify the Cost Statement subject to the penalty provisions for unallowable costs as stated in sections 306(b) and (i) of the Federal Property and Administrative Services Act of 1949 ([41 U.S.C. 256](#)), as amended.

§970.5232-3 Accounts, records, and inspection

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36376](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.3270\(a\)\(2\)](#), insert the following clause:

Accounts, Records, and Inspection (JUN 2007)

(a) *Accounts.* The contractor shall maintain a separate and distinct set of accounts, records, documents, and other evidence showing and supporting: all allowable costs incurred; collections accruing to the contractor in connection with the work under this contract, other applicable credits, negotiated fixed amounts, and fee accruals under this contract; and the receipt, use, and disposition of all Government property coming into the possession of the contractor under this contract. The system of accounts employed by the contractor shall be satisfactory to DOE and in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles consistently applied.

(b) *Inspection and audit of accounts and records.* All books of account and records relating to this contract shall be subject to inspection and audit by DOE or its designees in accordance with the provisions of Clause __, Access to and ownership of records, at all reasonable times, before and during the period of retention provided for in paragraph (d) of this clause, and the contractor shall afford DOE proper facilities for such inspection and audit.

(c) *Audit of subcontractors' records.* The contractor also agrees, with respect to any subcontracts (including fixed-price or unit-price subcontracts or purchase orders) where, under the terms of the subcontract, costs incurred are a factor in determining the amount payable to the subcontractor of any tier, to either conduct an audit of the subcontractor's costs or arrange for such an audit to be performed by the cognizant government audit agency through the contracting officer.

(d) *Disposition of records.* Except as agreed upon by the Government and the contractor, all financial and cost reports, books of account and supporting documents, system files, data bases, and other data evidencing costs allowable, collections accruing to the contractor in connection with the work under this contract, other applicable credits, and fee accruals under this contract, shall be the property of the Government, and shall be delivered to the Government or otherwise disposed of by the contractor either as the contracting officer may from time to time direct during the progress of the work or, in any event, as the contracting officer shall direct upon completion or termination of this contract and final audit of accounts hereunder. Except as otherwise provided in this contract, including provisions of Clause __, Access to and ownership of records, all other records in the possession of the contractor relating to this contract shall be preserved by the contractor for a period of three years after final payment under this contract or otherwise disposed of in such manner as may be agreed upon by the Government and the contractor.

(e) *Reports.* The contractor shall furnish such progress reports and schedules, financial and cost reports, and other reports concerning the work under this contract as the contracting officer may from time to time require.

(f) *Inspections.* The DOE shall have the right to inspect the work and activities of the contractor under this contract at such time and in such manner as it shall deem appropriate.

(g) *Subcontracts.* The contractor further agrees to require the inclusion of provisions similar to those in paragraphs (a) through (g) and paragraph (h) of this clause in all subcontracts (including fixed-price or unit-price subcontracts or purchase orders) of any tier entered into hereunder where, under the terms of the subcontract, costs incurred are a factor in determining the amount payable to the subcontractor.

(h) *Comptroller general.* (1) The Comptroller General of the United States, or an authorized representative, shall have access to and the right to examine any of the contractor's directly pertinent records involving transactions related to this contract or a subcontract hereunder.

(2) This paragraph may not be construed to require the contractor or subcontractor to create or maintain any record that the contractor or subcontractor does not maintain in the ordinary course of business or pursuant to a provision of law.

(3) Nothing in this contract shall be deemed to preclude an audit by the General Accounting Office of any transaction under this contract.

(i) *Internal audit.* The contractor agrees to design and maintain an internal audit plan and an internal audit organization.

(1) Upon contract award, the exercise of any contract option, or the extension of the contract, the contractor must submit to the contracting officer for approval an Internal Audit Implementation Design to include the overall strategy for internal audits. The Audit Implementation Design must describe:

(i) The internal audit organization's placement within the contractor's organization and its reporting requirements;

(ii) The audit organization's size and the experience and educational standards of its staff;

(iii) The audit organization's relationship to the corporate entities of the contractor;

(iv) The standards to be used in conducting the internal audits;

(v) The overall internal audit strategy of this contract, considering particularly the method of auditing costs incurred in the

performance of the contract;

(vi) The intended use of external audit resources;

(vii) The plan for audit of subcontracts, both pre-award and post-award; and

(viii) The schedule for peer review of internal audits by other contractor internal audit organizations, or other independent third party audit entities approved by the DOE contracting officer.

(2) By each January 31 of the contract performance period, the contractor must submit an annual audit report, providing a summary of the audit activities undertaken during the previous fiscal year. That report shall reflect the results of the internal audits during the previous fiscal year and the actions to be taken to resolve weaknesses identified in the contractor's system of business, financial, or management controls.

(3) By each June 30 of the contract performance period, the contractor must submit to the contracting officer an annual audit plan for the activities to be undertaken by the internal audit organization during the next fiscal year that is designed to test the costs incurred and contractor management systems described in the internal audit design.

(4) The contracting officer may require revisions to documents submitted under paragraphs (i)(1), (i)(2), and (i)(3) of this clause, including the design plan for the internal audits, the annual report, and the annual internal audits.

(j) *Remedies.* If at any time during contract performance, the contracting officer determines that unallowable costs were claimed by the contractor to the extent of making the contractor's management controls suspect, or the contractor's management systems that validate costs incurred and claimed suspect, the contracting officer may, in his or her sole discretion, require the contractor to cease using the special financial institution account in whole or with regard to specified accounts, requiring reimbursable costs to be claimed by periodic vouchering. In addition, the contracting officer, where he or she deems it appropriate, may: Impose a penalty under 970.5242-1, Penalties for unallowable costs; require a refund; reduce the contractor's otherwise earned fee; and take such other action as authorized in law, regulation, or this contract.

(End of clause)

Alternate I (DEC 2000). As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.3270\(a\)\(2\)\(i\)](#), if the contract includes the clause at [48 CFR 52.215-11](#), Price Reduction for Defective Cost or Pricing Data, the basic clause shall be modified as follows:

(a) Paragraph (a) of the basic clause shall be modified by adding the words “or anticipated to be incurred” after the words “allowable costs incurred.”

(b) Paragraph (g) of the basic clause shall be modified by adding the following:

The contractor further agrees to include an “Audit” clause, the substance of which is the “Audit” clause set forth at [48 CFR 52.215-2](#), in each subcontract which does not include provisions similar to those in paragraph (a) through paragraph (g) and paragraph (h) of this clause, but which contains a “defective cost or pricing data” clause.

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [72 FR 29081](#), May 24, 2007]

§970.5232-4 Obligation of funds

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36376](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36376](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.3270\(a\)\(3\)](#), insert the following clause:

Obligation of Funds (DEC 2000)

(a) *Obligation of funds.* The amount presently obligated by the Government with respect to this contract is __ dollars (\$__). Such amount may be increased unilaterally by DOE by written notice to the contractor and may be increased or decreased by written agreement of the parties (whether or not by formal modification of this contract). Estimated collections from others for work and services to be performed under this contract are not included in the amount presently obligated. Such collections, to the extent actually received by the contractor, shall be processed and accounted for in accordance with applicable requirements imposed by the contracting officer pursuant to the Laws, regulations, and DOE directives clause of this contract. Nothing in this paragraph is to be construed as authorizing the contractor to exceed limitations stated in financial plans established by DOE and furnished to the contractor from time to time under this contract.

(b) *Limitation on payment by the Government.* Except as otherwise provided in this contract and except for costs which may be incurred by the contractor pursuant to the Termination clause of this contract or costs of claims allowable under the contract occurring after completion or termination and not released by the contractor at the time of financial settlement of the contract in accordance with the clause entitled "Payments and Advances," payment by the Government under this contract on account of allowable costs shall not, in the aggregate, exceed the amount obligated with respect to this contract, less the contractor's fee and any negotiated fixed amount. Unless expressly negated in this contract, payment on account of those costs excepted in the preceding sentence which are in excess of the amount obligated with respect to this contract shall be subject to the availability of:

- (1) collections accruing to the contractor in connection with the work under this contract and processed and accounted for in accordance with applicable requirements imposed by the contracting officer pursuant to the Laws, regulations, and DOE directives clause of this contract, and
- (2) other funds which DOE may legally use for such purpose, provided DOE will use its best efforts to obtain the appropriation of funds for this purpose if not otherwise available.

(c) *Notices-Contractor excused from further performance.* The contractor shall notify DOE in writing whenever the unexpended balance of available funds (including collections available under paragraph (a) of this clause), plus the contractor's best estimate of collections to be received and available during the __ day period hereinafter specified, is in the contractor's best judgment sufficient to continue contract operations at the programmed rate for only __ days and to cover the contractor's unpaid fee and any negotiated fixed amounts, and outstanding encumbrances and liabilities on account of costs allowable under the contract at the end of such period. Whenever the unexpended balance of available funds (including collections available under paragraph (a) of this clause), less the amount of the contractor's fee then earned but not paid and any negotiated fixed amounts, is in the contractor's best judgment sufficient only to liquidate outstanding encumbrances and liabilities on account of costs allowable under this contract, the contractor shall immediately notify DOE and shall make no further encumbrances or expenditures (except to liquidate existing encumbrances and liabilities), and, unless the parties otherwise agree, the contractor shall be excused from further performance (except such performance as may become necessary in connection with termination by the Government) and the performance of all work hereunder will be deemed to have been terminated for the convenience of the Government in accordance with the provisions of the Termination clause of this contract.

(d) *Financial plans; cost and encumbrance limitations.* In addition to the limitations provided for elsewhere in this contract, DOE may, through financial plans, such as Approved Funding Programs, or other directives issued to the contractor, establish controls on the costs to be incurred and encumbrances to be made in the performance of the contract work. Such plans and directives may be amended or supplemented from time to time by DOE. The contractor agrees

- (1) To comply with the specific limitations (ceilings) on costs and encumbrances set forth in such plans and directives,

(2) To comply with other requirements of such plans and directives, and

(3) To notify DOE promptly, in writing, whenever it has reason to believe that any limitation on costs and encumbrances will be exceeded or substantially underrun.

(e) *Government's right to terminate not affected.* The giving of any notice under this clause shall not be construed to waive or impair any right of the Government to terminate the contract under the provisions of the Termination clause of this contract.

(End of clause)

Alternate I (DEC 2000). As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.3270\(a\)\(3\)\(i\)](#), paragraph (d) of the clause may be omitted in contracts which, expressly or otherwise, provide a contractual basis for equivalent controls in a separate clause.

§970.5232-5 Liability with respect to cost accounting standards

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36376](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36376](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.3270\(a\)\(5\)](#), insert the following clause:

Liability With Respect to Cost Accounting Standards (DEC 2000)

(a) The contractor is not liable to the Government for increased costs or interest resulting from its failure to comply with the clauses of this contract entitled, "Cost Accounting Standards," and "Administration of Cost Accounting Standards," if its failure to comply with the clauses is caused by the contractor's compliance with published DOE financial management policies and procedures or other requirements established by the Department's Chief Financial Officer or Procurement Executive.

(b) The contractor is not liable to the Government for increased costs or interest resulting from its subcontractors' failure to comply with the clauses at FAR 52.230-2, "Cost Accounting Standards," and FAR 52.230-6, "Administration of Cost Accounting Standards," if the contractor includes in each covered subcontract a clause making the subcontractor liable to the Government for increased costs or interest resulting from the subcontractor's failure to comply with the clauses; and the contractor seeks the subcontract price adjustment and cooperates with the Government in the Government's attempts to recover from the subcontractor.

§970.5232-6 Work for others funding authorization

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36376](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36376](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.3270\(a\)\(6\)](#), insert the following clause:

Work for Others Funding Authorization (DEC 2000)

Any uncollectible receivables resulting from the contractor utilizing contractor corporate funding for reimbursable work shall be the responsibility of the contractor, and the United States Government shall have no liability to the contractor for the contractor's uncollected receivables. The contractor is permitted to provide advance payment utilizing contractor corporate funds for reimbursable work to be performed by the contractor for a non-Federal entity in instances where advance payment from that entity is required under the Laws, regulations, and DOE directives clause of this contract and such advance cannot be obtained. The contractor is also permitted to provide advance payment utilizing contractor corporate funds to continue reimbursable work to be performed by the contractor for a Federal entity when the term or the funds on a Federal interagency agreement required under the Laws, regulations, and DOE directives clause of this contract have elapsed. The contractor's utilization of contractor corporate funds does not relieve the contractor of its responsibility to comply with all requirements for Work for Others applicable to this contract.

§970.5232-7 Financial management system

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36376](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36376](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.3270\(b\)\(1\)](#), insert the following clause:

Financial Management System (DEC 2000)

The contractor shall maintain and administer a financial management system that is suitable to provide proper accounting in accordance with DOE requirements for assets, liabilities, collections accruing to the contractor in connection with the work under this contract, expenditures, costs, and encumbrances; permits the preparation of accounts and accurate, reliable financial and statistical reports; and assures that accountability for the assets can be maintained. The contractor shall submit to DOE for written approval an annual plan for new financial management systems and/or subsystems and major enhancements and/or upgrades to the currently existing financial systems and/or subsystems. The contractor shall notify DOE thirty (30) days in advance of any planned implementation of any substantial deviation from this plan and, as requested by the contracting officer, shall submit any such deviation to DOE for written approval before implementation.

§970.5232-8 Integrated accounting

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36376](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36376](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.3270\(b\)\(2\)](#), insert the following clause:

Integrated Accounting (DEC 2000)

Integrated accounting procedures are required for use under this contract. The contractor's financial management system shall include an integrated accounting system that is linked to DOE's accounts through the use of reciprocal accounts and that has electronic capability to transmit monthly and year-end self-balancing trial balances to the Department's Primary Accounting System for reporting financial activity under this contract in accordance with requirements imposed by the contracting officer pursuant to the Laws, regulations, and DOE directives clause of this contract.

§970.5235-1 Federally funded research and development center sponsoring agreement

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36376](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.3501-4](#), the contracting officer shall insert the following clause:

Federally Funded Research and Development Center Sponsoring Agreement (DEC 2000)

(a) Pursuant to [48 CFR 35.017-1](#), this contract constitutes the sponsoring agreement between the Department of Energy and the contractor, which establishes the relationship for the operation of a Department of Energy sponsored Federally Funded Research and Development Center (FFRDC).

(b) In the operation of this FFRDC, the contractor may be provided access beyond that which is common to the normal contractual relationship, to Government and supplier data, including sensitive and proprietary data, and to Government employees and facilities needed to discharge its responsibilities efficiently and effectively. Because of this special relationship, it is essential that the FFRDC be operated in the public interest with objectivity and independence, be free from organizational conflicts of interest, and have full disclosure of its affairs to the Department of Energy.

(c) Unless otherwise provided by the contract, the contractor may accept work from a nonsponsor (as defined in [48 CFR 35.017](#)) in accordance with the requirements and limitations of DOE Order 481.1, Work for Others (Non-Department of Energy Funded Work) (see current version).

(d) As an FFRDC, the contractor shall not use its privileged information or access to government facilities to compete with the private sector. Specific guidance on restricted activities is contained in DOE Order 481.1.

(End of clause)

§970.5236-1 Government facility subcontract approval

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36376](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.3605-2](#), insert the following clause:

Government Facility Subcontract Approval (DEC 2000)

Upon request of the contracting officer and acceptance thereof by the contractor, the contractor shall procure, by subcontract, the construction of new facilities or the alteration or repair of Government-owned facilities at the plant. Any subcontract entered into under this paragraph shall be subject to the written approval of the contracting officer and shall contain the provisions relative to labor and wages required by law to be included in contracts for the construction, alteration, and/or repair, including painting and decorating, of a public building or public work.

(End of clause)

§970.5237-2 [Reserved]

§970.5242-1 Penalties for unallowable costs

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36376](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.4207-03-70](#), insert the following clause:

Penalties for Unallowable Costs (DEC 2000)

(a) Contractors which include unallowable cost in a submission for settlement for cost incurred, may be subject to penalties.

(b) If, during the review of a submission for settlement of cost incurred, the contracting officer determines that the submission contains an expressly unallowable cost or a cost determined to be unallowable prior to the submission, the contracting officer shall assess a penalty.

(c) Unallowable costs are either expressly unallowable or determined unallowable.

(1) An expressly unallowable cost is a particular item or type of cost which, under the express provisions of an applicable law, regulation, or this contract, is specifically named and stated to be unallowable.

(2) A cost determined unallowable is one which, for that contractor,

(i) Was subject to a contracting officer's final decision and not appealed;

(ii) The Department's Board of Contract Appeals or a court has previously ruled as unallowable; or

(iii) Was mutually agreed to be unallowable.

(d) If the contracting officer determines that a cost submitted by the contractor in its submission for settlement of cost incurred is:

(1) Expressly unallowable, then the contracting officer shall assess a penalty in an amount equal to the disallowed cost allocated to this contract plus interest on the paid portion of the disallowed cost. Interest shall be computed from the date of overpayment to the date of repayment using the interest rate specified by the Secretary of the Treasury pursuant to Pub. L. 92-41 (85 Stat. 97); or

(2) Determined unallowable, then the contracting officer shall assess a penalty in an amount equal to two times the amount of the disallowed cost allocated to this contract.

(e) The contracting officer may waive the penalty provisions when

(1) The contractor withdraws the submission before the formal initiation of an audit of the submission and submits a revised submission;

(2) The amount of the unallowable costs allocated to covered contracts is \$10,000 or less; or

(3) The contractor demonstrates to the contracting officer's satisfaction that:

(i) It has established appropriate policies, personnel training, and an internal control and review system that provides assurances that unallowable costs subject to penalties are precluded from the contractor's submission for settlement of costs; and

(ii) The unallowable costs subject to the penalty were inadvertently incorporated into the submission.

(End of clause)

§970.5243-1 Changes

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36376](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.4302-1](#), the contracting officer shall insert the following clause in all management and operating contracts:

Changes (DEC 2000)

(a) *Changes and adjustment of fee.* The contracting officer may at any time and without notice to the sureties, if any, issue written directions within the general scope of this contract requiring additional work or directing the omission of, or variation in, work covered by this contract. If any such direction results in a material change in the amount or character of the work described in the "Statement of Work," an equitable adjustment of the fee, if any, shall be made in accordance with the agreement of the parties and the contract shall be modified in writing accordingly. Any claim by the contractor for an adjustment under this clause must be asserted in writing within 30 days from the date of receipt by the contractor of the notification of change; provided, however, that the contracting officer, if it is determined that the facts justify such action, may receive and act upon any such claim asserted at any time prior to final payment under this contract. A failure to agree

on an equitable adjustment under this clause shall be deemed to be a dispute within the meaning of the clause entitled "Disputes."

(b) *Work to continue.* Nothing contained in this clause shall excuse the contractor from proceeding with the prosecution of the work in accordance with the requirements of any direction hereunder.

(End of clause)

§970.5244-1 Contractor purchasing system

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36376](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.4402-5](#), insert the following clause:

Contractor Purchasing System (MAY 2006)

(a) *General.* The contractor shall develop, implement, and maintain formal policies, practices, and procedures to be used in the award of subcontracts consistent with this clause and [48 CFR 970.44](#). The contractor's purchasing system and methods shall be fully documented, consistently applied, and acceptable to DOE in accordance with [48 CFR 970.4401-1](#). The contractor shall maintain file documentation which is appropriate to the value of the purchase and is adequate to establish the propriety of the transaction and the price paid. The contractor's purchasing performance will be evaluated against such performance criteria and measures as may be set forth elsewhere in this contract. DOE reserves the right at any time to require that the contractor submit for approval any or all purchases under this contract. The contractor shall not purchase any item or service the purchase of which is expressly prohibited by the written direction of DOE and shall use such special and directed sources as may be expressly required by the DOE contracting officer. DOE will conduct periodic appraisals of the contractor's management of all facets of the purchasing function, including the contractor's compliance with its approved system and methods. Such appraisals will be performed through the conduct of Contractor Purchasing System Reviews in accordance with 48 CFR subpart 44.3, or, when approved by the contracting officer, through the contractor's participation in the conduct of the Balanced Scorecard performance measurement and performance management system. The contractor's approved purchasing system and methods shall include the requirements set forth in paragraphs (b) through (y) of this clause.

(b) *Acquisition of utility services.* Utility services shall be acquired in accordance with the requirements of [48 CFR 970.41](#).

(c) *Acquisition of Real Property.* Real property shall be acquired in accordance with 48 CFR subpart 917.74.

(d) *Advance Notice of Proposed Subcontract Awards.* Advance notice shall be provided in accordance with [48 CFR 970.4401-3](#).

(e) *Audit of Subcontractors.*

(1) The contractor shall provide for:

(i) Periodic post-award audit of cost-reimbursement subcontractors at all tiers, and

(ii) Audits, where necessary, to provide a valid basis for pre-award or cost or price analysis.

(2) Responsibility for determining the costs allowable under each cost-reimbursement subcontract remains with the contractor or next higher-tier subcontractor. The contractor shall provide, in appropriate cases, for the timely involvement of the contractor and the DOE contracting officer in resolution of subcontract cost allowability.

(3) Where audits of subcontractors at any tier are required, arrangements may be made to have the cognizant

Federal agency perform the audit of the subcontract. These arrangements shall be made administratively between DOE and the other agency involved and shall provide for the cognizant agency to audit in an appropriate manner in light of the magnitude and nature of the subcontract. In no case, however, shall these arrangements preclude determination by the DOE contracting officer of the allowability or unallowability of subcontractor costs claimed for reimbursement by the contractor.

(4) Allowable costs for cost reimbursable subcontracts are to be determined in accordance with the cost principles of [48 CFR part 31](#), appropriate for the type of organization to which the subcontract is to be awarded, as supplemented by [48 CFR part 931](#). Allowable costs in the purchase or transfer from contractor-affiliated sources shall be determined in accordance with [48 CFR 970.4402-3](#) and [48 CFR 970.3102-3-21\(b\)](#).

(f) *Bonds and insurance.*

(1) The contractor shall require performance bonds in penal amounts as set forth in [48 CFR 28.102-2\(a\)](#) for all fixed priced and unit-priced construction subcontracts in excess of \$100,000. The contractor shall consider the use of performance bonds in fixed price nonconstruction subcontracts, where appropriate.

(2) For fixed-price, unit-priced and cost reimbursement construction subcontracts in excess of \$100,000 a payment bond shall be obtained on Standard Form 25A modified to name the contractor as well as the United States of America as obligees. The penal amounts shall be determined in accordance with [48 CFR 28.102-2\(b\)](#).

(3) For fixed-price, unit-priced and cost-reimbursement construction subcontracts, greater than \$25,000, but not greater than \$100,000, the contractor shall select two or more of the payment protections at [48 CFR 28.102-1\(b\)](#), giving particular consideration to the inclusion of an irrevocable letter of credit as one of the selected alternatives.

(4) A subcontractor may have more than one acceptable surety in both construction and other subcontracts, provided that in no case will the liability of any one surety exceed the maximum penal sum for which it is qualified for any one obligation. For subcontracts other than construction, a co-surety (two or more sureties together) may reinsure amounts in excess of their individual capacity, with each surety having the required underwriting capacity that appears on the list of acceptable corporate sureties.

(g) *Buy American.* The contractor shall comply with the provisions of the Buy American Act as reflected in [48 CFR 52.225-3](#) and [48 CFR 52.225-5](#). The contractor shall forward determinations of nonavailability of individual items to the DOE contracting officer for approval. Items in excess of \$100,000 require the prior concurrence of the Head of Contracting Activity. If, however, the contractor has an approved purchasing system, the Head of the Contracting Activity may authorize the contractor to make determinations of nonavailability for individual items valued at \$100,000 or less.

(h) *Construction and architect-engineer subcontracts -*

(1) *Independent estimates.* A detailed, independent estimate of costs shall be prepared for all construction work to be subcontracted.

(2) *Specifications.* Specifications for construction shall be prepared in accordance with the DOE publication entitled "General Design Criteria Manual."

(3) *Prevention of conflict of interest.*

(i) The contractor shall not award a subcontract for construction to the architect-engineer firm or an affiliate that prepared the design. This prohibition does not preclude the award of a "turnkey" subcontract so long as the subcontractor assumes all liability for defects in design and construction and consequential damages.

(ii) The contractor shall not award both a cost-reimbursement subcontract and a fixed-price subcontract for construction or architect-engineer services or any combination thereof to the same firm where those subcontracts will be performed at the same site.

(iii) The contractor shall not employ the construction subcontractor or an affiliate to inspect the firm's work. The contractor shall assure that the working relationships of the construction subcontractor and the

subcontractor inspecting its work and the authority of the inspector are clearly defined.

(i) *Contractor-affiliated sources.* Equipment, materials, supplies, or services from a contractor-affiliated source shall be purchased or transferred in accordance with [48 CFR 970.4402-3](#).

(j) *Contractor-subcontractor relationship.* The obligations of the contractor under paragraph (a) of this clause, including the development of the purchasing system and methods, and purchases made pursuant thereto, shall not relieve the contractor of any obligation under this contract (including, among other things, the obligation to properly supervise, administer, and coordinate the work of subcontractors). Subcontracts shall be in the name of the contractor, and shall not bind or purport to bind the Government.

(k) *Government property.* Identification, inspection, maintenance, protection, and disposition of Government property shall conform with the policies and principles of [48 CFR part 45](#), [48 CFR 945](#), the Federal Property Management Regulations 41 CFR chapter 101, the DOE Property Management Regulations 41 CFR chapter 109, and their contracts.

(l) *Indemnification.* Except for Price-Anderson Nuclear Hazards Indemnity, no subcontractor may be indemnified except with the prior approval of the Senior Procurement Executive.

(m) *Leasing of motor vehicles.* Contractors shall comply with [48 CFR 8.11](#) and [48 CFR 908.11](#).

(n) [Reserved]

(o) *Management, acquisition and use of information resources.* Requirements for automatic data processing resources and telecommunications facilities, services, and equipment, shall be reviewed and approved in accordance with applicable DOE Orders and regulations regarding information resources.

(p) *Priorities, allocations and allotments.* Priorities, allocations and allotments shall be extended to appropriate subcontracts in accordance with the clause or clauses of this contract dealing with priorities and allocations.

(q) *Purchase of special items.* Purchase of the following items shall be in accordance with the following provisions of [48 CFR 908.71](#) and the Federal Property Management Regulations, 41 CFR chapter 101:

(1) Motor vehicles-[48 CFR 908.7101](#)

(2) Aircraft-[48 CFR 908.7102](#)

(3) Security Cabinets-[48 CFR 908.7106](#)

(4) Alcohol-[48 CFR 908.7107](#)

(5) Helium-[48 CFR 908.7108](#)

(6) Fuels and packaged petroleum products-[48 CFR 908.7109](#)

(7) Coal-[48 CFR 908.7110](#)

(8) Arms and Ammunition-[48 CFR 908.7111](#)

(9) Heavy Water-[48 CFR 908.7121\(a\)](#)

(10) Precious Metals-[48 CFR 908.7121\(b\)](#)

(11) Lithium-[48 CFR 908.7121\(c\)](#)

(12) Products and services of the blind and severely handicapped-[41 CFR 101-26.701](#)

(13) Products made in Federal penal and correctional institutions-[41 CFR 101-26.702](#)

(r) *Purchase vs. lease determinations.* Contractors shall determine whether required equipment and property should be purchased or leased, and establish appropriate thresholds for application of lease vs. purchase determinations. Such determinations shall be made:

- (1) At time of original acquisition;
- (2) When lease renewals are being considered; and
- (3) At other times as circumstances warrant.

(s) *Quality assurance.* Contractors shall provide no less protection for the Government in its subcontracts than is provided in the prime contract.

(t) *Setoff of assigned subcontractor proceeds.* Where a subcontractor has been permitted to assign payments to a financial institution, the assignment shall treat any right of setoff in accordance with [48 CFR 932.803](#).

(u) *Strategic and critical materials.* The contractor may use strategic and critical materials in the National Defense Stockpile.

(v) *Termination.* When subcontracts are terminated as a result of the termination of all or a portion of this contract, the contractor shall settle with subcontractors in conformity with the policies and principles relating to settlement of prime contracts in 48 CFR Subparts 49.1, 49.2 and 49.3. When subcontracts are terminated for reasons other than termination of this contract, the contractor shall settle such subcontracts in general conformity with the policies and principles in 48 CFR Subparts 49.1, 49.2, 49.3 and 49.4. Each such termination shall be documented and consistent with the terms of this contract. Terminations which require approval by the Government shall be supported by accounting data and other information as may be directed by the contracting officer.

(w) *Unclassified controlled nuclear information.* Subcontracts involving unclassified uncontrolled nuclear information shall be treated in accordance with [10 CFR part 1017](#).

(x) *Subcontract Flowdown Requirements.* In addition to terms and conditions that are included in the prime contract which direct application of such terms and conditions in appropriate subcontracts, the contractor shall include the following clauses in subcontracts, as applicable:

- (1) Davis-Bacon clauses prescribed in [48 CFR 22.407](#).
- (2) Foreign Travel clause prescribed in [48 CFR 952.247-70](#).
- (3) Counterintelligence clause prescribed in [48 CFR 970.0404-4\(a\)](#).
- (4) Service Contract Act clauses prescribed in [48 CFR 22.1006](#).
- (5) State and local taxes clause prescribed in [48 CFR 970.2904-1](#).
- (6) Cost or pricing data clauses prescribed in [48 CFR 970.1504-3-1\(b\)](#).

(y) *Legal Services.* Contractor purchases of litigation and other legal services are subject to the requirements in [10 CFR part 719](#) and the requirements of this clause.

(End of clause)

[[65 FR 81009](#), Dec. 22, 2000, as amended at [66 FR 4627](#), Jan. 18, 2001; [71 FR 16243](#), Mar. 31, 2006]

§970.5245-1 Property

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36378](#), July 22, 2009.

Link to an amendment published at [74 FR 36380](#), July 22, 2009.

As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.4501-1\(a\)](#), insert the following clause:

Property (DEC 2000)

(a) *Furnishing of Government property.* The Government reserves the right to furnish any property or services required for the performance of the work under this contract.

(b) *Title to property.* Except as otherwise provided by the contracting officer, title to all materials, equipment, supplies, and tangible personal property of every kind and description purchased by the contractor, for the cost of which the contractor is entitled to be reimbursed as a direct item of cost under this contract, shall pass directly from the vendor to the Government. The Government reserves the right to inspect, and to accept or reject, any item of such property. The contractor shall make such disposition of rejected items as the contracting officer shall direct. Title to other property, the cost of which is reimbursable to the contractor under this contract, shall pass to and vest in the Government upon (1) issuance for use of such property in the performance of this contract, or (2) commencement of processing or use of such property in the performance of this contract, or (3) reimbursement of the cost thereof by the Government, whichever first occurs. Property furnished by the Government and property purchased or furnished by the contractor, title to which vests in the Government, under this paragraph are hereinafter referred to as Government property. Title to Government property shall not be affected by the incorporation of the property into or the attachment of it to any property not owned by the Government, nor shall such Government property or any part thereof, be or become a fixture or lose its identity as personality by reason of affixation to any realty.

(c) *Identification.* To the extent directed by the contracting officer, the contractor shall identify Government property coming into the contractor's possession or custody, by marking and segregating in such a way, satisfactory to the contracting officer, as shall indicate its ownership by the Government.

(d) *Disposition.* The contractor shall make such disposition of Government property which has come into the possession or custody of the contractor under this contract as the contracting officer may direct during the progress of the work or upon completion or termination of this contract. The contractor may, upon such terms and conditions as the contracting officer may approve, sell, or exchange such property, or acquire such property at a price agreed upon by the contracting officer and the contractor as the fair value thereof. The amount received by the contractor as the result of any disposition, or the agreed fair value of any such property acquired by the contractor, shall be applied in reduction of costs allowable under this contract or shall be otherwise credited to account to the Government, as the contracting officer may direct. Upon completion of the work or the termination of this contract, the contractor shall render an accounting, as prescribed by the contracting officer, of all government property which had come into the possession or custody of the contractor under this contract.

(e) *Protection of government property-management of high-risk property and classified materials.*

(1) The contractor shall take all reasonable precautions, and such other actions as may be directed by the contracting officer, or in the absence of such direction, in accordance with sound business practice, to safeguard and protect government property in the contractor's possession or custody.

(2) In addition, the contractor shall ensure that adequate safeguards are in place, and adhered to, for the handling, control and disposition of high-risk property and classified materials throughout the life cycle of the property and materials consistent with the policies, practices and procedures for property management contained in the Federal Property Management regulations (41 CFR chapter 101), the Department of Energy Property Management

regulations (41 CFR chapter 109), and other applicable regulations.

(3) High-risk property is property, the loss, destruction, damage to, or the unintended or premature transfer of which could pose risks to the public, the environment, or the national security interests of the United States. High-risk property includes proliferation sensitive, nuclear related dual use, export controlled, chemically or radioactively contaminated, hazardous, and specially designed and prepared property, including property on the militarily critical technologies list.

(f) *Risk of loss of Government property.*

(1)

(i) The contractor shall not be liable for the loss or destruction of, or damage to, Government property unless such loss, destruction, or damage was caused by any of the following:

(A) Willful misconduct or lack of good faith on the part of the contractor's managerial personnel;

(B) Failure of the contractor's managerial personnel to take all reasonable steps to comply with any appropriate written direction of the contracting officer to safeguard such property under paragraph (e) of this clause; or

(C) Failure of contractor managerial personnel to establish, administer, or properly maintain an approved property management system in accordance with paragraph (i)(1) of this clause.

(ii) If, after an initial review of the facts, the contracting officer informs the contractor that there is reason to believe that the loss, destruction of, or damage to the government property results from conduct falling within one of the categories set forth above, the burden of proof shall be upon the contractor to show that the contractor should not be required to compensate the government for the loss, destruction, or damage.

(2) In the event that the contractor is determined liable for the loss, destruction or damage to Government property in accordance with (f)(1) of this clause, the contractor's compensation to the Government shall be determined as follows:

(i) For damaged property, the compensation shall be the cost of repairing such damaged property, plus any costs incurred for temporary replacement of the damaged property. However, the value of repair costs shall not exceed the fair market value of the damaged property. If a fair market value of the property does not exist, the contracting officer shall determine the value of such property, consistent with all relevant facts and circumstances.

(ii) For destroyed or lost property, the compensation shall be the fair market value of such property at the time of such loss or destruction, plus any costs incurred for temporary replacement and costs associated with the disposition of destroyed property. If a fair market value of the property does not exist, the contracting officer shall determine the value of such property, consistent with all relevant facts and circumstances.

(3) The portion of the cost of insurance obtained by the contractor that is allocable to coverage of risks of loss referred to in paragraph (f)(1) of this clause is not allowable.

(g) *Steps to be taken in event of loss.* In the event of any damage, destruction, or loss to Government property in the possession or custody of the contractor with a value above the threshold set out in the contractor's approved property management system, the contractor:

(1) Shall immediately inform the contracting officer of the occasion and extent thereof,

(2) Shall take all reasonable steps to protect the property remaining, and

(3) Shall repair or replace the damaged, destroyed, or lost property in accordance with the written direction of the

contracting officer. The contractor shall take no action prejudicial to the right of the Government to recover therefore, and shall furnish to the Government, on request, all reasonable assistance in obtaining recovery.

(h) *Government property for Government use only.* Government property shall be used only for the performance of this contract.

(i) *Property Management -*

(1) *Property Management System.* (i) The contractor shall establish, administer, and properly maintain an approved property management system of accounting for and control, utilization, maintenance, repair, protection, preservation, and disposition of Government property in its possession under the contract. The contractor's property management system shall be submitted to the contracting officer for approval and shall be maintained and administered in accordance with sound business practice, applicable Federal Property Management regulations and Department of Energy Property Management regulations, and such directives or instructions which the contracting officer may from time to time prescribe.

(ii) In order for a property management system to be approved, it must provide for:

(A) Comprehensive coverage of property from the requirement identification, through its life cycle, to final disposition;

(B) Employee personal responsibility and accountability for Government-owned property;

(C) Full integration with the contractor's other administrative and financial systems; and

(D) A method for continuously improving property management practices through the identification of best practices established by "best in class" performers.

(iii) Approval of the contractor's property management system shall be contingent upon the completion of the baseline inventory as provided in subparagraph (i)(2) of this clause.

(2) *Property Inventory.* (i) Unless otherwise directed by the contracting officer, the contractor shall within six months after execution of the contract provide a baseline inventory covering all items of Government property.

(ii) If the contractor is succeeding another contractor in the performance of this contract, the contractor shall conduct a joint reconciliation of the property inventory with the predecessor contractor. The contractor agrees to participate in a joint reconciliation of the property inventory at the completion of this contract. This information will be used to provide a baseline for the succeeding contract as well as information for closeout of the predecessor contract.

(j) The term "contractor's managerial personnel" as used in this clause means the contractor's directors, officers and any of its managers, superintendents, or other equivalent representatives who have supervision or direction of:

(1) All or substantially all of the contractor's business; or

(2) All or substantially all of the contractor's operations at any one facility or separate location to which this contract is being performed; or

(3) A separate and complete major industrial operation in connection with the performance of this contract; or

(4) A separate and complete major construction, alteration, or repair operation in connection with performance of this contract; or

(5) A separate and discrete major task or operation in connection with the performance of this contract.

(k) The contractor shall include this clause in all cost reimbursable subcontracts.

(End of clause)

Alternate I (DEC 2000). As prescribed in [48 CFR 970.4501-1\(b\)](#), when the award is to a nonprofit contractor, replace paragraph (j) of the basic clause with the following paragraph (j):

(j) The term “contractor’s managerial personnel” as used in this clause means the contractor’s directors, officers and any of its managers, superintendents, or other equivalent representatives who have supervision or direction of all or substantially all of:

(1) The contractor’s business; or

(2) The contractor’s operations at any one facility or separate location at which this contract is being performed; or

(3) The contractor’s Government property system and/or a Major System Acquisition or Major Project as defined in DOE Order 4700.1 (Version in effect on effective date of contract).

| [Home](#) | [CFR](#) | [48 CFR](#) | [Department of Energy](#) | [Top](#) |

[License terms](#) · [Privacy policy](#)
Click here for copyright © information.